



## **USER GUIDE**

A downloadable, printable guide to your phone's features.

**htc** Desire 626s

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

| IMPORTANT INFORMATION   | 1  |
|---|----|
| Radio Frequency Exposure Operating Instructions                 | 1  |
| Important Note on Recoverable Data                              | 1  |
| INTRODUCTION  | 2  |
| About the User Guide  | 2  |
| Before Using Your Phone   | 2  |
| Descriptions in the User Guide                                  | 2  |
| Screenshots and Key Labels                                      | 2  |
| Other Notations   | 2  |
| GET STARTED   |    |
| Parts and Functions   | 3  |
| SIM Card  | 5  |
| Handling SIM Card   | 5  |
| Insert SIM Card   | 6  |
| SD Card   | 8  |
| Insert SD Card  | 8  |
| Unmount the SD Card   | 9  |
| Remove SD Card  | 10 |
| Format SD Card  | 10 |
| Charge the Battery  | 11 |
| Turn Your Phone On and Off                                      | 12 |
| Touchscreen Navigation  | 13 |
| Motion Gestures   | 18 |
| Activation and Service  | 20 |
| Complete the Setup Screens                                      | 21 |
| Transfer Content to Your New Phone                              | 23 |
| Transfer Content from an Android Phone                          | 23 |
| Transfer Content from an iPhone                                 |    |
| Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth            |    |
| Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer                |    |
| Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone |    |
| Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone  | 26 |
| BASIC OPERATIONS  | 28 |

| Basi   | cs  | 28 |
|--------|---|----|
|        | Home Screen and Applications (Apps) List                        | 28 |
|        | Onscreen Navigation Keys  | 29 |
|        | Get to Know Your Settings                                       | 29 |
|        | Using Quick Settings  | 30 |
|        | Capture Screenshots   | 31 |
| App    | lications   | 32 |
|        | Apps List   | 32 |
|        | Open an App   | 34 |
| Pho    | ne Number   | 37 |
| Siler  | nt Mode   | 38 |
| Airp   | lane Mode   | 38 |
| Ente   | er Text   | 39 |
|        | HTC Sense Keyboard  | 39 |
|        | Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard                  | 39 |
|        | Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard       | 40 |
|        | Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard | 42 |
|        | Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard                | 43 |
|        | Calibrate the Keyboard  | 43 |
|        | Edit Text   | 43 |
| Goo    | gle Account   | 44 |
|        | Create a Google Account   | 45 |
|        | Sign In to Your Google Account                                  | 46 |
| Goo    | gle Play Store  | 46 |
|        | Find and Install an App   | 46 |
|        | Request a Refund for a Paid App                                 | 47 |
|        | Update an App   | 48 |
|        | Uninstall an App  | 48 |
|        | Get Help with Google Play                                       | 48 |
| Lock   | and Unlock Your Screen  | 49 |
| Upd    | ate Your Phone  | 50 |
|        | Update Your Phone Software                                      | 50 |
|        | Update Your Profile   | 51 |
|        | Update Your PRL   | 52 |
| YOUR P | HONE INTERFACE  | 53 |
| Hom    | ne Screen Basics  | 53 |
|        | Home Screen Layout  | 53 |

|    | Extended Home Screens - Widget Panels    | 54 |
|----|--|----|
|    | Status Bar                               | 54 |
|    | Notifications Panel                      | 56 |
|    | Manage App Notifications                 | 57 |
|    | Front Indicator Light (LED)              | 57 |
|    | Change LED Notification Settings         | 57 |
|    | HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen | 58 |
|    | Customize the Home Screen                | 61 |
|    | Change the Wallpaper                     | 61 |
|    | Customize the Launch Bar                 | 62 |
|    | Change Your Main Home Screen             | 62 |
|    | Organize Your Widget Panels              | 62 |
|    | Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts      | 63 |
|    | HTC Sense Home Widget                    | 65 |
|    | Customize the Lock Screen                | 67 |
|    | Lock Screen Notifications                | 69 |
|    | Themes                                   | 69 |
|    | Download Themes                          | 70 |
|    | Bookmark Themes                          | 70 |
|    | Create Themes                            | 70 |
|    | Mix and Match Themes                     | 71 |
|    | Find Your Themes                         | 72 |
|    | Share Themes                             | 72 |
|    | Delete a Theme                           | 73 |
| РН | ONE APP                                  | 74 |
|    | Place and Answer Calls                   |    |
|    | Call Using the Phone Dialer              | 74 |
|    | Set Up Speed Dial                        |    |
|    | Return a Missed Call                     |    |
|    | Answer Phone Calls                       |    |
|    | In-Call Screen Layout and Operations     |    |
|    | Place Calls from History/People          |    |
|    | Call History                             |    |
|    | Open Call History                        |    |
|    | Save a Number From Call History          |    |
|    | Prepend a Number From Call History       |    |
|    | Block a Caller                           | 82 |

|    | Erase Call History                        | 82  |
|----|---|-----|
|    | Optional Services                         | 83  |
|    | Voicemail (Traditional)                   | 83  |
|    | Conference Calling                        | 84  |
|    | Caller ID Blocking                        | 85  |
|    | Call Waiting                              | 85  |
|    | Call Forwarding                           | 85  |
|    | Internet Calls                            | 86  |
|    | Add an Internet Calling Account           | 86  |
|    | Make an Internet Call                     | 86  |
|    | Call Settings                             | 87  |
|    | Change Ringtone Settings                  | 87  |
|    | Contacts                                  | 87  |
|    | Your Contacts List                        | 88  |
|    | Find People                               | 89  |
|    | Set Up Your Profile                       | 89  |
|    | Add Entries to the People App             | 90  |
|    | Get in Touch with a Contact               | 91  |
|    | Manage People Entries                     | 92  |
|    | Import or Copy Contacts                   | 93  |
|    | Merge Entries in People                   | 93  |
|    | Send Contact Information                  | 94  |
|    | Contact Groups                            | 95  |
|    | Back Up and Restore Your Contacts         | 97  |
|    | Private Contacts                          | 97  |
| ME | SSAGING AND INTERNET                      | 99  |
|    | Text and Multimedia Messaging             | 99  |
|    | Send a Text Message (SMS)                 | 99  |
|    | Send a Multimedia Message (MMS)           | 100 |
|    | Send a Group Message                      | 101 |
|    | Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message | 102 |
|    | Read and Reply to a Message               | 102 |
|    | Help Protect Your Messages                | 104 |
|    | Block Unwanted Messages                   | 104 |
|    | Delete Messages and Conversations         | 105 |
|    | Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages    | 105 |
|    | Text and Multimedia Message Options       | 106 |
|    |   |     |

| Gmail  | 109 |
|--|-----|
| Create and Send a Gmail Message                            | 109 |
| Check Received Gmail Messages                              | 109 |
| Manage Gmail Messages                                      | 111 |
| Add a Gmail Account  | 111 |
| Get Help with Gmail  | 112 |
| Email  | 112 |
| Add an Email Account                                       | 112 |
| Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account                         | 113 |
| Check Your Mail Inbox                                      | 113 |
| Organize Your Inbox  | 114 |
| Send an Email Message                                      | 115 |
| Read and Reply to an Email Message                         | 115 |
| Save an Image in an Email Message                          | 116 |
| Manage Email Messages                                      | 116 |
| Search Email Messages                                      | 117 |
| Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email                        | 117 |
| Use Smart Sync   | 118 |
| Delete an Email Account                                    | 119 |
| Change the Email Account Settings                          | 119 |
| Data Services General Information (4G LTE and 3G Networks) | 121 |
| 4G LTE   | 121 |
| Data Connection Status and Indicators                      | 121 |
| Turn the Data Connection On or Off                         | 122 |
| Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off                  | 122 |
| Manage Your Data Usage                                     | 122 |
| Chrome Browser   | 123 |
| Use Browser Tabs   | 124 |
| Add Bookmarks  | 124 |
| Browsing History   | 125 |
| Private Browsing   | 125 |
| Set Browser Options  | 126 |
| Chrome Support   | 126 |
| Search for Information                                     | 126 |
| Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone                 | 126 |
| Search the Web with Your Voice                             | 127 |
| Set Search Options   | 127 |

|     | Get Instant Information with Google Now          | 127 |
|-----|--|-----|
| CAN | MERA AND VIDEO                                   | 130 |
|     | Take Pictures and Record Videos                  | 130 |
|     | Get Started with the Camera                      | 130 |
|     | Take a Picture                                   | 132 |
|     | Capture Better Photos                            | 133 |
|     | Record a Video                                   | 134 |
|     | Take a Photo While Recording a Video - VideoPic® | 134 |
|     | Selfies and People Shots                         | 134 |
|     | Take a Panoramic Photo                           | 136 |
|     | Use HDR  | 136 |
|     | Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode              | 137 |
|     | View Pictures and Videos Using Gallery           | 137 |
|     | View Pictures and Videos                         | 138 |
|     | Add Photos or Videos to an Album                 | 140 |
|     | Copy or Move Photos or Videos Between Albums     | 141 |
|     | Tag Photos and Videos                            | 141 |
|     | Search for Photos and Videos                     | 142 |
|     | Trim Videos                                      | 143 |
|     | Save a Photo From a Video                        | 143 |
|     | View a Zoe Highlight in Gallery                  | 144 |
|     | One Gallery                                      | 144 |
|     | Photo Editor                                     | 145 |
|     | Basic Photo Editing                              | 145 |
|     | Creative Effects                                 | 147 |
| USE | EFUL APPS AND FEATURES                           | 155 |
|     | Navigation                                       | 155 |
|     | HTC Car  | 155 |
|     | Google Maps                                      | 157 |
|     | Hangouts   | 160 |
|     | Calculator                                       | 160 |
|     | Calendar   | 161 |
|     | Schedule or Edit an Event                        | 162 |
|     | View Calendar Events                             | 162 |
|     | Choose Which Calendar to Show                    | 163 |
|     | Share an Event (vCalendar)                       | 163 |
|     | Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation           | 163 |

| Dismiss or Snooze Reminders                         | 164 |
|---|-----|
| Clock   | 164 |
| Check the Time                                      | 164 |
| Set the Date and Time Manually                      | 164 |
| Set an Alarm  | 165 |
| Additional Clock Features                           | 165 |
| Check the Weather                                   | 166 |
| Twitter   | 166 |
| Install the Twitter App on Your Phone               | 166 |
| Tweet on Twitter                                    | 167 |
| Facebook  | 167 |
| Install the Facebook App on Your Phone              | 167 |
| Use Facebook  | 167 |
| YouTube   | 168 |
| Music Apps and Sound Enhancements                   | 169 |
| Listen to Music                                     | 169 |
| Google Play Music App                               | 174 |
| Google Wallet                                       | 175 |
| Online Storage and File Management                  | 176 |
| Google Drive  | 176 |
| HTC Sync Manager                                    | 178 |
| File Manager  | 179 |
| Voice Recorder                                      | 181 |
| HTC Dot View  | 182 |
| Change the HTC Dot View Wallpaper                   | 182 |
| Select Which Notifications to Display               | 183 |
| See Recent Calls on HTC Dot View                    | 183 |
| HTC Help  | 184 |
| CONNECTIVITY  | 185 |
| Transfer Files Between Your Phone and a Computer    |     |
| Wi-Fi   |     |
| Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network     | 186 |
| Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks |     |
| Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS                  | 187 |
| Disconnect from a Wireless Network                  |     |
| Wi-Fi Direct  | 187 |
| Virtual Private Networks (VPN)                      | 188 |

|    | Add a VPN Connection  | 188 |
|----|---|-----|
|    | Connect to a VPN  | 188 |
|    | Disconnect From a VPN   | 189 |
|    | Mobile Hotspot  | 189 |
|    | Bluetooth   | 189 |
|    | Bluetooth Information   | 190 |
|    | Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit                              | 190 |
|    | Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit                                      | 191 |
|    | Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device                                  | 191 |
|    | Send Information Using Bluetooth                                    | 191 |
|    | Where Sent Information is Saved                                     | 192 |
|    | Receive Files Using Bluetooth                                       | 193 |
|    | HTC Connect   | 194 |
|    | Share Media Using HTC Connect                                       | 194 |
|    | Stream Music to Speakers Powered by Qualcomm AllPlay Media Platform | 196 |
|    | Stream Music to Blackfire Compliant Speakers                        | 196 |
|    | HTC BoomSound Connect App   | 198 |
| SE | TTINGS  | 200 |
|    | Basic Settings  | 200 |
|    | Airplane Mode   | 201 |
|    | Wi-Fi Settings  | 201 |
|    | Bluetooth Settings  | 201 |
|    | Mobile Data Settings  |     |
|    | HTC Connect   | 201 |
|    | More Wireless & Network Settings                                    | 201 |
|    | Personalize Settings  | 202 |
|    | Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings                         | 202 |
|    | Ringtone  | 202 |
|    | Notification Sound  | 202 |
|    | Alarm   | 203 |
|    | Font  | 203 |
|    | Keyboard and Dialer Color   | 203 |
|    | Accounts & Sync   | 203 |
|    | Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More                  |     |
|    | Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account                                  | 204 |
|    | Add Email Accounts  | 204 |
|    | Add One or More Google Accounts                                     |     |
|    |   |     |

| Manage Your Online Accounts                | 205 |
|--|-----|
| Location Settings                          | 206 |
| Location Setting                           | 206 |
| Google Location History                    | 206 |
| HTC Location Services                      | 206 |
| Security Settings                          | 207 |
| Screen Lock Settings                       | 207 |
| Lock Screen and Password Settings          | 209 |
| Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs | 209 |
| Work with Certificates                     | 209 |
| Accessibility Settings                     | 210 |
| Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack          | 211 |
| Backup and Reset                           | 213 |
| Backup                                     | 213 |
| Reset Your Phone                           | 215 |
| Get Content From Another Phone             | 216 |
| Display & Gestures Settings                | 216 |
| Auto-rotate Screen                         | 216 |
| Font Size                                  | 217 |
| Brightness                                 | 217 |
| Screen Timeout (Sleep)                     | 217 |
| Daydream                                   | 218 |
| Media Gesture                              | 218 |
| Calibrate the Screen                       | 218 |
| Sound & Notification Settings              | 218 |
| Sound Profile and Vibrate                  | 219 |
| Volumes                                    | 219 |
| Notification and Alarm Sound               |     |
| Do Not Disturb Mode                        |     |
| Incoming Calls - Ringtone                  | 221 |
| Incoming Calls - Other Options             |     |
| System Sound Settings                      | 221 |
| Notification - Flash Notifications         |     |
| Notification - App Light Notifications     |     |
| Notification - Lock Screen Notifications   |     |
| Call Settings                              |     |
| Call Features                              | 223 |

|    | Voicemail Settings                               | 223 |
|----|--|-----|
|    | Hearing Aids                                     |     |
|    | CDMA Call Settings                               | 223 |
|    | Internet Call Settings                           | 225 |
|    | Apps Settings                                    | 225 |
|    | Uninstall Third-party Apps                       | 225 |
|    | Clear Application Cache and Data                 | 225 |
|    | Storage Settings                                 | 225 |
|    | Types of Storage                                 | 225 |
|    | Copy Files To or From Your Phone                 | 226 |
|    | Make More Storage Space                          | 226 |
|    | Encrypt Data on Your Phone                       | 227 |
|    | Power Settings                                   | 228 |
|    | Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode      | 228 |
|    | Use Extreme Power Saving Mode                    | 228 |
|    | Check Battery Usage                              | 228 |
|    | Check Battery History                            | 229 |
|    | Display the Battery Percentage                   | 229 |
|    | Battery Saving Tips                              | 229 |
|    | Language & Keyboard Settings                     | 231 |
|    | Change the Phone Language                        | 231 |
|    | Spell Checker                                    | 231 |
|    | Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input     | 231 |
|    | Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing | 232 |
|    | Speech Settings                                  | 232 |
|    | Date & Time Settings                             | 233 |
|    | Printing   | 233 |
|    | Activate This Device                             | 233 |
|    | System Updates                                   | 234 |
|    | About Your Phone                                 | 234 |
|    | Copyright Information                            | 235 |
| FO | R ASSISTANCE                                     | 237 |
|    | Troubleshooting                                  | 237 |
|    | Specifications                                   | 238 |
|    | Virgin Mobile Account Information and Help       | 239 |
|    | Manage Your Account                              | 239 |
|    | Top-Up Your Account                              | 239 |

| IND | ΕX | K | 24  |  |
|-----|----|---|-----|--|
| IIV | -  | \ | — — |  |

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The following topics provide important information that should be read prior to using your HTC Desire 626s.

# RADIO FREQUENCY EXPOSURE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

This device was tested for compliance with the applicable FCC and Industry Canada specific absorption rate (SAR) limits for radio frequency (RF) exposure during typical body-worn operations. To ensure that RF exposure levels remain at or below the tested levels, use a belt-clip, holster, or similar accessory that maintains a minimum separation distance of 1.0 cm between your body and the device, with either the front or back of the device facing towards your body. Such accessories should not contain any metallic components. Body-worn accessories that do not meet these specifications may not ensure compliance with applicable SAR limits and their use should be avoided.

### IMPORTANT NOTE ON RECOVERABLE DATA

Files and other data that have been deleted, cleared, removed, or erased from your device may still be recoverable by third-party data recovery software. Even a factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

### INTRODUCTION

The following topics describe the basics of using this guide and your new phone.

### ABOUT THE USER GUIDE

Thank you for purchasing your new HTC Phone. The following topics explain how best to use this guide to get the most out of your phone.

### Before Using Your Phone

Read Important Information thoroughly for proper usage.

Accessible services may be limited by subscription contract conditions.

### Descriptions in the User Guide

Note that most descriptions in this guide are based on your phone's setup at the time of purchase. Unless otherwise noted, instructions begin from the phone's home screen, which is displayed by tapping  $\triangle$ . Some operation descriptions may be simplified.

### Screenshots and Key Labels

Screenshots in the user guide may appear differently on your phone. Key labels in the user guide are simplified for description purposes and differ from your phone's display.

#### Other Notations

In the user guide, the phone may be referred to either as "phone," "device," or "handset." A microSD™ or microSDHC™ card is referred to as an "SD Card" or a "memory card."

Introduction 2

### **GET STARTED**

The following topics give you all the information you need to set up your phone and wireless service the first time.

### PARTS AND FUNCTIONS

These topics illustrate your phone's primary parts and key functions.

#### Phone Layout

The following illustration outlines your phone's primary external features and buttons.



| Part     | Description  |
|----------|--|
|          | Allows you to plug in either a stereo headset or an optional headset for convenient, hands-free conversations. |
| Receiver | Lets you hear the caller's voice during a call.  |

| Part                               | Description  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Proximity Sensor                   | Detects how close an object is to the surface of the screen. This is typically used to detect when your face is pressed up against the screen, such as during a phone call.                          |
|                                    | While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and turns off the screen to prevent accidental key taps.  |
| Volume Button                      | Allows you to adjust the ringtone or media volume or adjust the voice volume during a call.  |
| Power/Lock Button                  | Press quickly to turn off and lock the phone screen. Press and hold to turn the phone on or off or switch to airplane mode.  |
| Charger/Accessory Jack             | Allows you to connect the phone charger or the USB cable (included).   |
| Speaker                            | Lets you hear the different ringtones and sounds, and the caller's voice when speakerphone is on.  |
| Touchscreen                        | Displays all the information needed to operate your phone, such as the call status, the Contacts list, and the date and time. Also provides one-tap access to all of your features and applications. |
| Nano SIM and microSD<br>Card Slots | Under the cover are slots that hold the preinstalled nano SIM card and an optional microSD card for additional storage. See <u>SIM</u> <u>Card</u> and <u>SD Card</u> for details.                   |
| Notification LED                   | Displays a phone notification, charging status, or alert.  |
| Front Camera                       | Takes pictures and records videos while facing the screen, and allows you to video conference.   |

**CAUTION!** Inserting an accessory into the incorrect jack may damage the phone.



| Part       | Description   |
|------------|---|
| Microphone | Captures stereo audio while recording video. This microphone also features noise reduction and auto gain control. |
| Flash      | Helps illuminate subjects in low-light environments when the camera is focusing and capturing a picture or video. |
| Camera     | Lets you take pictures and videos.  |

### SIM CARD

The SIM card is an IC card containing the phone number and other customer information.

### Handling SIM Card

Keep the following in mind when handling a SIM card.

- Customer is responsible for any damage caused by inserting SIM Card in another-brand IC card reader, etc. The company is not responsible in such case.
- Always keep the IC chip clean.
- Wipe clean with a dry, soft cloth.
- Avoid applying labels. May damage SIM Card.

- See instructions included with SIM Card for handling.
- SIM Card is the property of the company.
- SIM is replaceable (at cost) in case of loss/damage.
- Return SIM Card to the company when cancelling subscription.
- Returned SIM Cards are recycled for environmental purposes.
- Note that SIM Card specifications and performance may change without notice.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of information that is stored on SIM Card. The company is not responsible for damages from stored information that is lost.
- Always follow emergency procedures to suspend service if your SIM Card or phone (SIM Card inserted) is lost/stolen. For details, contact Customer Service.
- Always power off phone before inserting/removing SIM Card.

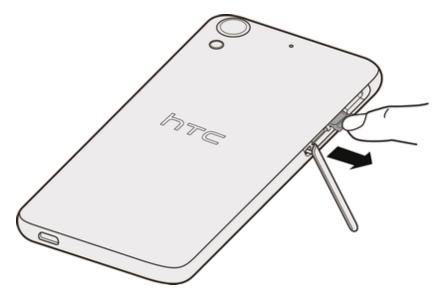
#### Insert SIM Card

Follow these instructions to insert a SIM card. Remember to power off your phone before inserting a SIM card.

- 1. If the phone is on, press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** and then tap **Power off**.
- 2. Hold the phone face down with the left side facing you.
- 3. From the notch, pry open the slot cover with your finger.



4. Pull the SIM card tray out of the upper slot.



5. Place the nano SIM card into the tray. Make sure that the nano SIM card's gold contacts are facing up.



6. Insert the tray back into the slot.



- 7. Replace the slot cover.
- 8. Turn on the phone.

### SD CARD

Your phone supports the use of an optional SD card (not included) to expand its storage capacity. It supports cards up to 128GB. Some cards may not operate properly with your phone.

#### SD Card Cautions

**Data**: Information stored on SD Card can become lost or changed accidently or as a result of damage. It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of important data. The company is not responsible for damages from data that is lost or changed.

Reading/Writing Data: Never power off while reading or writing data.

**Battery Level**: A low battery charge may prevent reading/writing to SD Card.

**Handling SD Card**: Use/store SD Cards away from the reach of infants. May cause choking if swallowed.

#### Insert SD Card

Follow these steps to insert an optional SD card (not included). Make sure to power your phone off before inserting or removing an SD card.

- 1. If the phone is on, press and hold the Power/Lock Button and then tap Power off.
- 2. Hold the phone face down with the left side facing you.
- 3. From the notch, pry open the slot cover with your finger.



4. With its gold contacts facing up, insert the microSD card into the slot (lower) until it clicks into place.



- 5. Replace the slot cover.
- 6. Turn on the phone.

#### Unmount the SD Card

Always unmount the SD card before removing it from your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Storage.
- 3. Under SD card, tap **Unmount SD card**, and then tap **OK**.
  - The menu option name changes from **Unmount SD Card** to **Mount SD Card**. The card is now unmounted.
- 4. Remove the microSD card. See Remove SD Card.

#### Remove SD Card

Follow these instructions to remove an SD card. Always power the phone off before inserting or removing an SD card.

- 1. If the phone is on, press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** and then tap **Power off**.
- 2. Hold the phone face up.
- 3. Push the microSD card fully into the slot and release.
  - The microSD card ejects from the slot.
- 4. Gently pull the microSD card out of the slot.
- 5. Replace the microSD card and slot cover.

#### Format SD Card

When you insert an optional SD card for the first time, it is recommended that you format it on your phone.

**Note**: When you format or erase the microSD card, the files CANNOT be retrieved. To help prevent the loss of important data, please check the contents before you erase the card.

**Important**: Formatting or erasing the microSD card may not permanently erase all data from the card, including personal information.

- 1. Tap **△** > **...** > **②** Settings.
- 2. Tap Storage.
- 3. Under SD card, tap Unmount SD card, and then tap OK.
- 4. Tap Format SD card > ERASE SD CARD.

**Note**: If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to enter the screen lock before you can proceed.

- 5. Tap **ERASE EVERYTHING**.
  - All data on the SD card is erased, and the card is formatted for use on your phone.

### CHARGE THE BATTERY

Follow these instructions to charge your phone's battery using either the included AC adapter or via a USB connection on your computer.

**Important**: Use only the adapter and the USB cable that came with your phone to charge the battery. When the battery power is too low, make sure to use the power adapter to charge, not the USB cable connection with your computer.

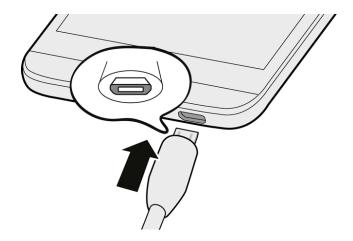
**Note**: As a safety precaution, the battery may stop charging to avoid overheating.

**Note**: When you're using the Internet and charging the battery, your phone may become warmer. This is normal.

**Tip:** To conserve energy, unplug the power adapter from the electrical outlet after you finish charging.

#### Charge Using the AC Adapter

- 1. Plug one end of the USB cable into the AC adapter.
- 2. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the Charger/Accessory Jack at the bottom of your phone.



- 3. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the AC adapter.
- 4. Plug the AC adapter into an electrical outlet.
  - The indicator light illuminates when charging starts. The light turns green when the battery is fully charged. Fully charging a battery may take up to three hours.
- 5. After charging, disconnect the phone from the charger.
  - Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet, and remove the USB cable from the phone.

#### Charge Using a PC Connection

Before using a PC connection to charge your phone, ensure that the computer is turned on. Depending on the type of connection, your phone's battery may not charge.

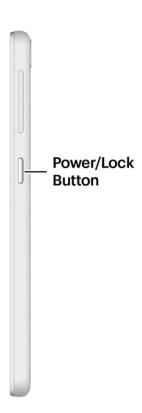
- 1. Insert the small end of the USB cable into the charger/accessory jack on the bottom of your phone.
- 2. Insert the large end of the USB cable into an external USB port on your computer.
- 3. After charging, disconnect the USB cable from both the phone and the computer.

### TURN YOUR PHONE ON AND OFF

The instructions below explain how to turn your phone on and off.

#### Turn Your Phone On

■ Press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** ( ) on the right side of the phone.



You will feel or hear the phone vibrate when it has been turned on. The first time you turn on your phone, it will search for mobile service, and begin the setup application.

#### Turn Your Phone Off

1. Press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** ( ) to open the Power options menu.

**Note**: When the screen is locked and you press the **Power/Lock Button** it will only turn off the screen and not the phone. You will need to unlock the screen first before you press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** to turn the phone off. See **Lock and Unlock Your Screen** for details.

2. Tap **Power off** to turn the phone off.

#### Restart Your Phone

Restarting the phone will close all running apps and will clear all temporary files in the phone's memory. Make sure to save your work before restarting the phone.

- 1. Press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** to open the Power options menu.
- 2. Tap Restart.
- 3. In the Restart phone confirmation box, tap **RESTART**.

**Note**: If the phone or touchscreen becomes unresponsive, press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** for about 12 seconds to restart the phone.

### TOUCHSCREEN NAVIGATION

Use touch gestures to get around the Home screen, open apps, scroll through lists, and more.

**Important**: When the **TalkBack** option in the Accessibility settings is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures. For details, see Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack.

#### Tap or Touch

When you want to type using the onscreen keyboard, select items onscreen such as application and settings icons, or press onscreen buttons, simply tap or touch them with your finger.



#### **Touch and Hold**

To open the available options for an item (for example, a contact or link in a Web page), touch and hold the item.



### Swipe or Slide

Quickly swipe your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen to go to other widget panels, scroll through documents, and more.



#### Drag

To drag, touch and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to drag. While dragging, do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.



#### **Flick**

Flicking the screen is similar to swiping, except that you need to swipe your finger in light, quick strokes. This finger gesture is always in a vertical direction, such as when flicking the contacts or message list.



#### **Touch and Flick**

On the Home screen, you can easily move a widget or icon from one screen to another. Touch and hold the widget or icon with one finger, and flick the screen to the new location with another finger.



#### Pinch and Spread

"Pinch" the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom out or "spread" the screen to zoom in when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers inward to zoom out and outward to zoom in.)



Slide two fingers together to zoom out of the picture or text.



#### Two-finger Swipe

Swipe down from the status bar using two fingers to access Quick Settings.



### Three-finger Gesture

- Swipe up using three fingers to share content such as photos, videos, and music from your phone. You can also share streaming media from apps such as YouTube™.
- Swipe down to disconnect from the device.



**Note**: Media gesture is turned on in **Settings** by default, which makes the three-finger gesture work only when sharing content or using HTC apps.

**Note**: The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack.

#### Three-finger Tap

While using the HTC Car app, tap the screen with three fingers to activate the voice command mode.



### **MOTION GESTURES**

Use motion gestures to rotate the screen, mute, lower the ringtone volume, and more.

#### Flip to Mute

When a call comes in, you can turn your phone over to mute it.



To change the Flip to mute settings:

- Tap **△**> **∷** > **Settings ⑨**.
- 2. Tap **Sound & notification** > **Flip to mute**, and select a setting:

- **Mute once**. Mute only once after you flipped the phone. The phone will ring again when there are subsequent incoming calls.
- **Mute always**. After flipping the phone to mute a call, keep it always muted for all incoming calls.

#### Pick Up to Lower Volume

In a business meeting or restaurant, pick your phone up when a call comes in to lower the ringtone volume.



You can turn this feature on or off.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap **Sound & notification**, and then select or clear **Quiet ring on pickup**.

#### Set Volume to Automatically Increase While in Your Pocket or Bag

You can set your phone to recognize when it's in your bag or pocket and raise the ringtone volume so that you can hear it in noisy environments.



You can turn this feature on or off.

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap **Sound & notification**, and then select or clear **Pocket mode**.

#### Rotate Your Phone for a Better View

For most screens, you can automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the phone sideways. When entering text, you can turn the phone sideways to bring up a bigger keyboard. See HTC Sense Keyboard for more details.



To turn this feature off:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap **Display & gestures**, and then clear the **Auto rotate screen** option.

**Note**: The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack.

### ACTIVATION AND SERVICE

Before using your phone, you must set up your service with Virgin Mobile. You will need your phone's serial numbers (MEID and ICCID). These numbers can be found on the phone's packaging.

For more information about your Virgin Mobile account, see <u>Virgin Mobile Account Information and Help</u>.

#### Create Your Account and Pick Your Plan

Set up your Virgin Mobile account.

- 1. From your computer, visit virginmobileusa.com and click Activate.
- 2. Choose an activation option and click Next. Then enter your zip code and click Next.
- 3. When prompted, enter the serial number (MEID) printed on the sticker located on the back of your phone in the battery compartment. This number can also be found on the bottom panel of the

phone's package.

- 4. Follow the remaining instructions to choose your plan and select a payment method.
- 5. Follow the activation instructions below and you'll be able to start using your phone.

#### **Activate Your Phone**

After setting up your account on <u>virginmobileusa.com</u>, simply turn your device on. Your device is designed to activate automatically. If you are swapping from another Virgin Mobile device to a new one, be sure to turn off the old device before swapping the serial number (MEID). Once the MEID swap is complete, turn on the new device and the programming information will be pushed to your device automatically.

You can also start the activation process manually.

■ Tap > Settings > Activate this device.

### COMPLETE THE SETUP SCREENS

The setup screens help you set up certain features and preferences on your phone. Once your phone has been turned on, you will see a Welcome message. You can then complete the setup process.

**Note**: You may be able to complete the setup screens before your phone has been activated on your Virgin Mobile account.

1. From the Welcome screen, select a language and tap **START** to get started.



**Note**: If you are visually impaired or hard of hearing, touch and hold the screen with two fingers to enable TalkBack. Tap **ACCESSIBILITY SETTINGS** to change accessibility options.

- 2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete each section. For each topic, you will have the option to skip it and continue to the next screen.
  - Terms of use. Read the terms of use and tap NEXT.
  - Connect to Wi-Fi. Connect to a Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> network. For more information, see <u>Turn Wi-Fi On</u> and Connect to a Wireless Network.
  - Hands Free Activation. See Activation and Service.
  - Add your account. Enter your Google Account and password, and then tap ACCEPT. If you
    don't have a Google Account, tap Or create a new account. See <u>Add a Gmail Account</u> for
    details.

**Note**: You do not need to sign up for a Google Account to use your phone. However, to download apps from the Google Play<sup>TM</sup> Store or chat in Google+<sup>TM</sup> Hangouts<sup>TM</sup>, you must link your phone to a Google Account.

- **Get your apps & data**. If you have backed up your old phone's data to your Google Account, you can easily restore that backup on your new phone.
  - If you want to restore a previous device backup, tap ▼ next to the backed up device name, select the backup you want to restore, and then tap DONE. Tap ▼ next to All apps, select which apps you want restored on your new phone, and then tap DONE. Tap NEXT.
  - If you don't want to restore any backup, tap ▼ next to the backed up device name, select Set up as new device, and then tap DONE. Tap NEXT.
- **Google location**. Choose whether to use Google's location service. For more information, see <u>Location Setting</u> and <u>Google Location History</u>.
- Transfer or restore content. If you want to transfer content from an old phone to your new HTC phone, choose Transfer content. See Transfer Content to Your New Phone.

Or if you want to restore your apps and settings from a backup you've created in your online storage, select **Restore from HTC Backup**, and sign in to your HTC Account. See Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone.

- HTC Backup. This screen shows apps, social accounts, contacts, and more that you've set
  up and gives you the option to back up your phone daily to your online storage. For more
  information, see <u>Backup</u>.
- Accounts & sync. Set up your email and social network accounts including Google, Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Exchange ActiveSync<sup>®</sup>, Mail, HTC Account, LinkedIn<sup>®</sup>, Outlook.com, and Instagram.
- Nameandprotect your phone. Give your new phone a name or set up a screen lock to help secure your phone.
- **Personalize HTC Sense Home**. Choose to share your location and personal usage data for relevant apps and information recommendations on the HTC Sense<sup>®</sup> Home.

3. Tap **FINISH**.

Your phone is now set up for use. If you skipped any part of the setup, you can access additional options through the Apps screen or through **Settings**.

### TRANSFER CONTENT TO YOUR NEW PHONE

You can easily transfer content, contacts, messages, calendar events, music, photos, videos, and more from other phones or your computer to your new phone using the HTC Transfer Tool, Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>, or direct USB connection.

#### Transfer Content from an Android Phone

On your old Android phone, download the HTC Transfer Tool and use it to transfer your content to your new HTC phone. The types of locally stored content on your old phone that the tool can transfer include contacts, messages, calendar events, Web bookmarks, music, photos, and videos. Some settings can also be transferred.

**Note**: You need Android version 2.2 or later to use the HTC Transfer Tool on your old phone.

**Note**: If your old phone has Android version 2.1 or an earlier version, you need to use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see <u>Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth</u>.

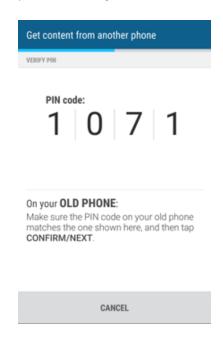
1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Transfer content** on the Transfer or restore content screen.

- or -

Tap △> Settings ○ > Get content from another phone.

- 2. Choose whether to transfer from an old HTC Android phone or other Android phone.
- 3. Tap Full transfer, and then tap NEXT.
- 4. Follow the steps shown on your new phone to download and install the HTC Transfer Tool from Google Play to your old phone, install it, and open the tool.

5. When you see a PIN on your old phone, make sure the same PIN also appears on your new phone before you continue.



**Note**: If the PIN code doesn't appear, this may mean that your old phone is unable to connect to your new phone. If this happens, tap **Try another transfer method** on your new phone to use Bluetooth for transferring contacts from your old phone.

- 6. On your old phone, choose the types of content you want to transfer, and then tap **START** or **TRANSFER**.
- 7. Wait for the transfer to finish.
- 8. Tap **DONE** on both phones.

#### Transfer Content from an iPhone

If you have an iPhone  $^{\mathbb{R}}$ , there are 3 easy ways to transfer your contacts, messages, and other content to your HTC Desire 626s.

- Back up and restore iPhone content through iCloud<sup>®</sup>. For details, see <u>Transfer iPhone Content</u> Through iCloud.
- Back up iPhone content using iTunes<sup>®</sup> on your computer, and then use HTC Sync Manager to transfer the content to HTC Desire 626s. For details, see <u>HTC Sync Manager</u>.
- If you only need to copy your contacts, you can use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see <u>Transfer</u> <u>Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth</u>.

#### Transfer iPhone Content Through iCloud

If you have an iCloud account, sync iPhone content to your iCloud storage, and then transfer the content to HTC Desire 626s. You can transfer the following types of content from iCloud: contacts, bookmarks, text messages, messages from iMessage<sup>®</sup>, calendar events, and photos.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Settings > Get content from another phone.
- 2. Tap iPhone > Import from iCloud backup.
- 3. Enter your iCloud email address and password.
- 4. Follow the steps shown onscreen to back up your iPhone content to your iCloud storage, and then tap **SIGN IN**.
- 5. Choose the iPhone backup that you want to transfer to HTC Desire 626s, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 6. Choose the types of content you want to transfer, and then tap **IMPORT**.
- 7. Wait for the transfer to finish, and then tap **DONE**.

**Note**: Only some contact details can be transferred, such as the contact name, photo, postal address, email address, birthdate, anniversary date, and notes.

## Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth

Use Bluetooth to transfer contacts from an iPhone, a phone that has Android version 2.1 (or earlier version), or other types of phones.

1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Transfer content** on the Transfer or restore content screen.

-or-

- 2. Choose whether to transfer from an Android phone, iPhone, or other phone types. If you chose to transfer from an Android phone, tap **Quick transfer**.
- 3. On your old phone, turn Bluetooth on and set it to discoverable mode.
- 4. Follow the onscreen instructions on your old and new phones to pair them and start the data transfer

**Note**: Depending on the capabilities of your old phone, you may be able to transfer not only contacts but also other data such as calendar events and text messages through Bluetooth.

**Note**: Use your iCloud storage or HTC Sync Manager to transfer more types of content from an iPhone. For details, see HTC Sync Manager.

# Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer

There are two ways you can transfer content to or from your computer.

Get Started 25

- Connect your phone to your computer. Your computer will recognize it just like any removable USB drive, and you can copy your media between them.
- Download and use the HTC Sync Manager software on your computer. You can set it
  up to automatically get music, photos, and videos off your phone to your computer. You can also
  sync playlists from your computer to the phone.

If you have an iPhone, you can even connect it and transfer the camera roll (photos and videos) to your computer. Then reconnect your phone and copy them over. For details, see HTC Sync Manager.

Tired of keeping copies of your media in several places? Use online storage services to put your media in one place so you can manage them anywhere — on your computer, phone, and other mobile devices.

Go to **Settings**, and then tap **Accounts & sync** >  $\blacksquare$  to check first what online storage accounts are available on your phone. Sign in to the one you want to use and then use the Gallery app to access media in your online storage.

## Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone

There are different ways you can individually add contacts and other content to your new HTC phone.

- Sync with your computer. Use HTC Sync Manager to sync contacts, documents, playlists, and more between your phone and a computer running a Windows<sup>®</sup> or Mac OS<sup>®</sup> operating system. You can also use it to transfer iTunes backup that contains contacts, messages, and other content from an iPhone to your computer, and then to your HTC phone. For details, see <a href="https://example.com/html/>
  Manager">https://example.com/html/>
  Manager</a>.
- **Google Account**. Google contacts are imported to your phone after you sign in to your Google Account. You can also create more Google contacts right from your phone.
- **Social network accounts**. Log in to your favorite social networks to sync contact information from them.
- Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync. Your phone syncs your work contacts from the Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync Server in your workplace.
- Phone contacts. You can create contacts locally on your phone, if you don't prefer to store them on your online accounts.

# RESTORE YOUR BACKUP FROM YOUR ONLINE STORAGE TO YOUR NEW PHONE

If you used HTC Backup before, you can restore your backup to your new HTC phone when you turn the phone on for the first time or after a factory reset.

**Important**: Depending on the amount of content, restoring your backup to your phone through your data connection may use a lot of time and data. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

Get Started 26

- 1. On the Transfer or restore content screen, select **Restore from HTC Backup**, and sign in to your HTC Account or Google Account.
- 2. Use your mobile data or Wi-Fi connection to connect your phone to the Internet.
  - If you used your Google login credentials as your HTC Account and your backup is in Google Drive™, tap Sign in with Google.
  - If not, tap **Remind me later**, go to the Transfer or restore content screen, and select **Restore from HTC Backup**.
- 3. Follow the onscreen instructions to restore your backup and to continue setting up your phone.
- 4. Slide open the Notifications panel to check if there's any notification to finish setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar. To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

Your apps will appear on the Apps screen as they are installed. The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

Get Started 27

# **BASIC OPERATIONS**

The following topics outline basic features and operations of your phone.

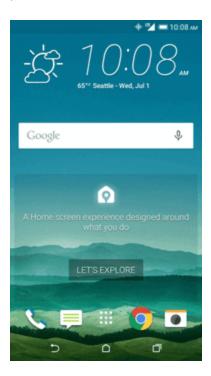
# **BASICS**

The following topics offer an overview of your phone's basic operations.

## Home Screen and Applications (Apps) List

Most of your phone's operations originate from the home screen or the apps list.

The first time you turned on the phone, tap **Tap to personalize** and then tap **LET'S EXPLORE** to personalize the home screen with the HTC Sense Home widget.



- Swipe left and you'll discover widget panels for adding your favorite widgets, apps, and more so they're just a tap away. And if you need more room for your stuff, you can add more widget panels. For details, see Customize the Home Screen.
- Swipe right for HTC BlinkFeed<sup>®</sup> to show posts from your social networks, headlines from your favorite news media, and more. For details, see HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen.
- You can change the apps on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen. See <u>Customize the Launch Bar</u>.
- You can add an onscreen navigation key. See Onscreen Navigation Keys for details.
- Tap ::: to see all apps installed on your phone.

**Tip**: While you're in another screen or app, tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  to return to the last Home screen you visited.

# Onscreen Navigation Keys

Your phone has onscreen navigation keys at the bottom of the screen which rotate when you change the orientation. The onscreen navigation keys do not show up when the screen is off, when you're on the Camera viewfinder screen, or when you chose to hide it.

#### Standard Navigation Keys



| Key         | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Back 5      | Go to the previous screen.   |
| Home 🗅      | Go to the Home screen.   |
| Recent apps | Show the thumbnails of the most recently used apps and Google Chrome tabs. |

#### Customizable Navigation Key

You can add a fourth navigation key.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Change navigation buttons.
- 3. Select the fourth navigation key.

| Key                 | Description                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Turn off screen 🖰   | Puts the phone to sleep mode.       |
| Auto rotate 🖰       | Turn auto rotate screen on or off.  |
| Notifications :=    | Shows the notification list.        |
| Hide navigation bar | Hides the navigation bar.           |
| Quick settings      | Shows the available Quick Settings. |

- 4. Drag the key to the desired position on the onscreen navigation bar.
- 5. Tap **DONE**.

**Tip**: Swipe up from any of the navigation keys to access Google Search.

# Get to Know Your Settings

Change the ringtone, set up a Wi-Fi connection, add your accounts, and more in **Settings**.

- 1. Open **Settings** either from the Quick Settings panel or Apps screen.
  - Swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
  - Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings  $\bigcirc$ .
- 2. Here are some of the basic settings you can change:
  - Tap the ON/OFF switch next to an item such as **Wi-Fi** to turn it on or off. Tap the item itself to configure its settings.
  - Tap **Sound & notification** to set a ringtone, choose a sound profile, and configure incoming call sound settings.
  - Tap Personalize to change the wallpaper, add widgets and shortcuts to the widget panel, and more.
  - Tap **Accounts & sync** to add and sign in to your different accounts, such as email, social networks, and more.
  - Tap **Security** to help secure your phone, for example with a screen lock.

For more information, see **Settings**.

## **Using Quick Settings**

In the Quick Settings panel, easily turn settings such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on or off.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.



- 2. To turn a setting on or off, just tap its tile.
- 3. To change the options for a setting, touch and hold its tile. Or tap ....

**Tip**: To switch to the Notifications panel, swipe up the Quick Settings panel. To switch back to the Quick Settings panel, swipe down the Notifications panel.

#### **Customize Quick Settings**

Aside from the default tiles, there are several other tiles available in Quick Settings.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap  $\square$  and do one of the following:
  - In the Quick Settings list, touch and hold next to the item you want to move and drag it to rearrange the list.
  - Under Hidden items, touch and hold and drag it up to make it available in Quick Settings.

**Note**: There is a limit to the number of tiles that can be shown in Quick Settings. You may need to remove an existing item to make space for another one. To remove an item, drag it below Hidden items.

# Capture Screenshots

Capture the phone screen to show off your high game score, write a blog post about your phone's features, or post a status update about a song you're playing.

Press and hold the Power/Lock Button and the Volume Down Button at the same time.

The image is saved in the Screenshots album in Gallery.

**Tip**: To share the image immediately after capturing, wait until you see the icon in the status bar. Slide the Notifications panel open, and tap under the Screenshot notification. If you don't see, spread two fingers apart on the screenshot notification.

# **APPLICATIONS**

The following topics describe how to access the Applications (Apps) screen and launch apps on your phone.

## Apps List

The Apps screen includes any apps you download and install on your phone. The following table outlines the primary apps that have been preinstalled on your phone.

**Important**: The list of available apps on your phone is subject to change without notice.

| Арр                | Function/Service  |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Calculator</b>  | Perform basic and advanced mathematical operations. See <u>Calculator</u> .   |
| Calendar           | View, create and send events. See <u>Calendar</u> .   |
| Camera             | Take photos and capture videos. See <u>Camera and Video</u> .   |
| <b>®</b> Car       | Navigate to your destination, plus more. See HTC Car.   |
| Chrome             | Browse the Internet. See Chrome Browser.  |
| Clock              | Check the time, set an alarm, or use the World Clock, Stopwatch and Timer. See Clock.   |
| <b>Downloads</b>   | View all your downloaded files here.  |
| <b>△</b> Drive     | Manage your Google Drive online storage. See Google Drive.  |
| ▲ Emergency Alerts | View emergency alerts.  |
| File Manager       | Organize files and folders on your phone and storage card. See File Manager.  |
| <b>Gallery</b>     | View your photos and videos. See View Pictures and Videos Using Gallery.  |
| M Gmail            | Create, send, and receive emails. See Gmail.  |
| 8 Google           | Open Google Search or Google Now. See Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone and Get Instant Information with Google Now. |
| SGoogle Settings   | Set your Google Search, Google Now, and other Google Mobile Services options.   |

| Арр               | Function/Service  |
|-------------------|---|
| S Google+         | Post statuses, share photos, and write comments with your circle of friends.                  |
| <b>9</b> Hangouts | Send SMS, MMS, or start a video chat. See Hangouts.   |
| Help              | Find useful content on how to use your phone, view troubleshooting information, and more. See |

| Арр                   | Function/Service  |
|-----------------------|---|
| © Settings            | Change your phone settings. See <u>Settings</u> .   |
| * Setup               | Run the setup wizard and complete the setup screens. See <u>Complete</u> the Setup Screens.     |
| Themes                | Personalize your phone with themes. See <u>Themes</u> .   |
| Voice Recorder        | Record and share your voice or create a voice memo. See <u>Voice</u> <u>Recorder</u> .          |
| <b>♥</b> Voice Search | Search the Web using your voice. See Search the Web with Your Voice.                            |
| Weather               | Check the weather in your location and in other cities around the world. See Check the Weather. |
| YouTube               | Watch or upload videos online. See YouTube.   |

# Open an App

There are several options for opening an app from the Home screen.

- Tap an app on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen.
- Tap ::: to go to the Apps screen, and then tap the app you want to use.
- On the Apps screen, tap  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and then enter the name of the app you're looking for.

#### Open an App or Folder from the Lock Screen

 On the lock screen, drag an app or folder icon up to unlock the screen and directly go to the app or folder.

If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before your phone opens the app or folder.

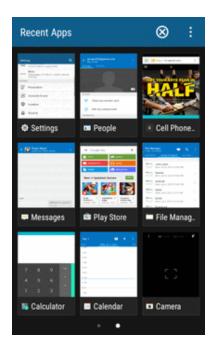
**Tip**: The shortcuts on the lock screen are the same ones on your Home screen's launch bar. To change the lock screen shortcuts, you'll have to replace the apps or folders on the launch bar.

#### Switch Between Recently Opened Apps

When you're multitasking and using different apps on your phone or opened multiple Web pages from the Web browser, you can easily switch between the apps or Web pages you've recently opened.

- Tap to see recently-opened apps.
  - To switch back to an app, just tap it.
  - To remove an app from the list, drag it up.

• To clear the recent apps list, tap  $\otimes$ .

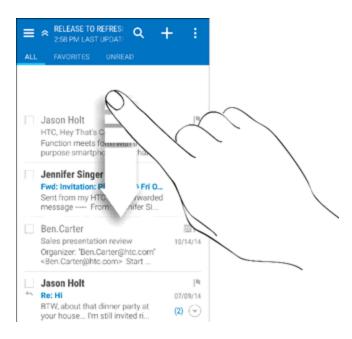


**Tip**: You can change the view of your recent apps. Tap **E** > **Settings** > **Layout**, and then choose between **Card view** or **Grid view**.

#### Refresh Content

In some apps, you can easily refresh content that's synced or downloaded from the Web with a simple finger gesture.

- 1. While viewing content such as weather or Mail inbox, scroll to the top of the screen.
- 2. Pull down the screen with your finger, and then release to refresh.



#### Arrange Apps on the Apps Screen

Personalize the Apps screen to your liking. You can rearrange the apps and change the layout.

- 1. Tap**△**>....
- 2. Tap ▼ and then choose how to arrange apps, such as alphabetically. If you want to group apps into folders or rearrange them, select **Custom**.

#### Move Apps and Folders

- 2. Tap **→** > **Custom**.
- 3. Tap > Rearrange apps.
- 4. Touch and hold an app or folder, and then do one of the following:
  - Drag the app to another position on the same page. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
  - Drag the app to the 

    or

    or

    arrow to move it to another page.
- 5. When you're done moving apps and folders, tap  $\checkmark$ .

#### **Group Apps into Folders**

- 1. Tap ♠> :::.
- 2. Tap **→** > **Custom**.
- 4. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it over to another app to automatically create a folder.
- 5. To add more apps, drag each app over to the folder.
- 6. To name the folder, open the folder, tap its title bar, and then enter a folder name.
- 7. When you're done grouping apps and folders, tap  $\checkmark$ .

#### Remove Apps from a Folder

- 2. Tap **→** > **Custom**.
- 3. Tap > Rearrange apps.
- 4. Tap the folder to open it.
- 5. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it out to the Apps screen. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
- 6. When you're done removing apps, tap ✓.

### Hide or Show Apps on the Apps Screen

- 1. Tap ♠> :::.
- 2. Tap > Hide/Unhide apps.
- 3. Select the apps you want to hide, or clear their check boxes to unhide them.
- 4. Tap **DONE**.

# PHONE NUMBER

Follow the instructions below to display your phone's wireless phone number.

- Tap **△**> : :: > Settings **②**.
- 2. Tap About > Phone identity.
  - You will see the number listed under **Phone number**.

### SILENT MODE

Silent mode sets your phone's ringtone, operation sounds, notifications, etc., not to sound to avoid disturbing others around you.

**Note**: Camera shutter, video start/stop tones, and certain other sounds may still be active during silent mode.

To set to silent mode:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Sound profile.
- Select Silent.

**Tip**: You can also set the phone to silent mode using Quick Settings. See <u>Using Quick Settings</u> for details.

To restore the sound to normal mode:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Sound profile.
- 3. Select Normal.
  - Your phone's sound settings are now restored.

Tip: You can also restore the phone sound using Quick Settings. See Using Quick Settings for details.

# AIRPLANE MODE

When you enable Airplane (flight) mode, all wireless radios on your phone are turned off, including the call function, data services, Bluetooth, and Wi-Fi. You can still use many of your phone's features, such as Gallery, Camera, and Music, when you are on an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

When you disable Airplane mode, the call function is turned back on and the previous state of Bluetooth and Wi-Fi is restored.

Note: You can manually turn Bluetooth and Wi-Fi back on after enabling Airplane mode.

- Do any of the following to turn Airplane mode on or off:
  - Press and hold the **Power/Lock Button**, and then tap **Airplane mode**.
  - With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings. Tap the AIRPLANE MODE tile to turn airplane mode on or off.

When enabled, the Airplane mode icon  $\uparrow$  is displayed in the status bar.

### ENTER TEXT

You can type on your phone using one of the available touchscreen keyboards or Google voice typing.

## HTC Sense Keyboard

Typing is fast and accurate with the HTC Sense keyboard.

- Word prediction also saves typing time. As you type, you'll see word suggestions that you can choose from. You can even add words to the word prediction dictionary. For details, see <a href="Enter type="Enter type="Ente
- You can type words by just speaking. For details, see <u>Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense</u> Keyboard.
- Turn on the **Trace keyboard** so you can type words by just sliding your finger from one letter to another. For details, see Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard.
- Just swipe right to access the numeric and symbol keyboard. Or swipe left to switch between languages.
- The keys have secondary numbers, punctuation symbols, or other characters that you can quickly insert without having to switch to the numeric and symbol keyboard. For example, just touch and hold a key on the first row to insert a number.
- Choose from a wide selection of emojis.
- Show or hide navigational arrow keys on the keyboard. If you enable the arrow keys in Settings, they'll only appear on the portrait keyboard.

And since everyone has their own typing style, you can calibrate the keyboard in so it learns how you type. See Calibrate the Keyboard.

## Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard

The onscreen keyboard becomes available when you tap a text field in an app. Enter letters and numbers, change the keyboard layout or language, and more.



- Tap the keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter letters and numbers, as well as punctuation marks and symbols.
  - Tap  $\uparrow$  to enter an uppercase letter. Tap  $\uparrow$  twice to turn on caps lock.

- Tap and hold keys with gray characters at the top to enter numbers, symbols, or accented letters. Some keys have multiple characters or accents associated with them.
- Swipe right to show number and symbol keys. To return to the main keyboard, swipe left.
- If you selected multiple keyboard language, swipe left from the main keyboard to switch to the other keyboard language.
- On supported apps, turn the phone sideways to show a larger Standard keyboard that lets you type easily using two thumbs.
- Tap V to close the onscreen keyboard.

**Tip**: To open the keyboard settings, touch and hold the comma key until you see **Q** above the key. Or go to **Settings** > **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.

#### Change the HTC Sense Keyboard Language

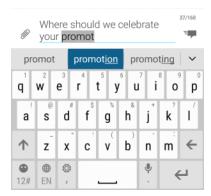
If multiple keyboard languages are available on your phone, you can choose which languages to enable in the onscreen keyboard.

- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input > Keyboard selection.
- 3. Choose the languages you want and tap **2**.
- 4. To change the keyboard language, do any of the following while entering text:
  - Swipe left on the onscreen keyboard (not available if you're using trace keyboard).
  - Tap the language key until you see the language you want to use.
  - Touch and hold the language key, and then drag your finger to the keyboard language you want to use.



# Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard

The onscreen keyboard has predictive text to help you type quickly and accurately. Predictive text input is enabled by default, and word suggestions are displayed as you type.



To enter a word in predictive mode, do any of the following:

- Tap the space bar to insert the highlighted word in the suggestion list.
- Tap a word from the suggestion list.
- Tap the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

**Tip**: If you've accidentally chosen a wrong word from the suggestion list, you can always go back and change it by tapping the word and selecting another suggestion.

#### Set a Second Language for Word Prediction

You can set the word prediction to be bilingual. As you type, you'll get word suggestions in the languages that you've selected.

Note: Bilingual prediction is available only when you're using a Latin-based keyboard.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input > Keyboard selection.
- 3. Tap Bilingual prediction, and then choose the language you want.

#### Add Words to the Word Prediction Dictionary

Add frequently-used names and acronyms to the word prediction dictionary to easily find them in the suggestion list.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input.
- 4. Enter a word and tap **OK**.

While you're entering text using the Standard keyboard layout, tapping an underlined word lets you store it in the dictionary or replace it with a suggested word.

### Edit or Delete Words in the Word Prediction Dictionary

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input.
- 3. Tap Personal dictionary.
  - To edit a word, tap the item in the list.
  - To delete items from the dictionary, tap > **Delete**. Select the words you want to remove, and then tap **DELETE**.

# Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard

Instead of tapping the keys on the onscreen keyboard, you can "trace" to type words.

### Turn On Trace Keyboard

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input.
- 3. Select the **Trace keyboard** option.
- 4. Tap **5**.

#### Enter Text Using Trace Keyboard

- 1. Tap an area where you want to enter text.
- 2. Slide your finger from one letter to the next to enter a word.
- 3. Lift your finger when the word is completed.



4. If the word that appears after you traced isn't the one you want, you can:

- Tap a word from the suggestion list.
- Tap the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

## Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard

Try speaking the words to enter them in most text fields that let you use the touch input keyboard.

- 1. Tap an area where you want to enter text.
- 2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold  $\Psi$ .
- 3. When you see the microphone image, speak out the words you want to type.

**Tip**: To set the voice input language, tap > **Settings** > **Languages**. You can choose one or more languages. Available languages depend on the voice input languages supported by Google.

- 4. If a word doesn't match what you've spoken and it's underlined, tap the underlined word to delete it or to see more choices.
- 5. Enter punctuation marks by saying the name (for example, say "comma").

### Calibrate the Keyboard

You can calibrate the keyboard to suit your typing style.

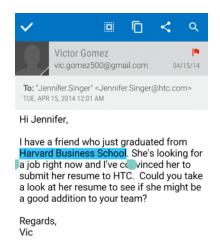
- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input.
- 3. Tap Advanced > Calibration tool.
- 4. Follow screen instructions to calibrate the keyboard.

#### Edit Text

In HTC apps, such as Messages, you can select and copy text, and then paste or share it.

#### Select, Copy, and Paste Text

- 1. Touch and hold on a word.
- 2. Drag the start and end anchors to highlight the surrounding text you want to select.



- 3. After you have selected the text you want to copy, tap . The selected text is then copied to the clipboard.
- 4. In a text entry field (for example while composing an email), touch and hold at the point where you want to paste the text.
- 5. Tap **PASTE** or tap

**Tip**: To copy the address of a linked webpage, touch and hold the link, and then tap **Copy link** address.

#### Share Text

- 1. After you have selected the text you want to share, tap <.
- 2. Choose where to paste and share the selected text, such as in an email message or social network status update.

# **GOOGLE ACCOUNT**

You will need a Google Account to access several phone features such as Gmail, Google Maps, Hangouts, and the Google Play applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your phone and your online Google Account.

## Google Account Cautions

Be sure not to forget your Google Account ID or password.

## Create a Google Account

If you do not already have a Google Account, you can create one online or using your phone.

**Note**: You can also create and sign into your Google/Gmail account through your phone's Setup application.

**Note**: Although you need a Gmail account to use certain features of your phone, such as Google Play, you do not need to use Gmail as the default email account for your phone.

#### Create a Google Account Online

- 1. From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to google.com.
- 2. On the main page, click **Sign in > Create an account**.
- 3. Follow the onscreen prompts to create your free account.
- 4. Navigate to your the Gmail inbox.

#### Create a Google Account Using Your Phone

- 1. Tap △> Settings ② > Accounts & sync.
- 2. Tap **+** > **Google**.
- 3. Tap Or create a new account.
- 4. Enter your first name and last name, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 5. Enter your desired email address, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 6. When prompted, enter and re-enter a password, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 7. In the Rescue info screen, enter the phone number to use to recover your account password in case you forgot or tap **REMIND ME LATER** to do this later. Tap **NEXT**.
  - If you've entered a phone number, a security code will be sent to that phone and you will be asked to enter the code in the Verify phone number screen.
- 8. Tap ACCEPT to agree to the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy, and then tap NEXT.
- 9. In the Google services screen, tap **NEXT**.
- 10. In the Sync your account screen, select the items you would like to sync with your phone and then tap **NEXT**.
  - You are signed in to your Google Account, and your phone will synchronize the selected items.
- 11. To go to your Gmail inbox, tap  $\triangle > \square > \square > \square$  Gmail  $\square$ .

## Sign In to Your Google Account

If you have a Google Account but have not yet signed in with your phone, follow these instructions to sign in to your Google Account.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎ > Accounts & sync.
- 2. Tap **+** > **Google**.
- 3. Enter your email address and tap **NEXT**.
- 4. Enter your password and tap **NEXT**.
- 5. Select the items you would like to sync with your phone and then tap **NEXT**.
  - You are signed in to your Google Account, and your phone will synchronize the selected items.
- 6. To go to your Gmail inbox, tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Smail  $\square$ .

### GOOGLE PLAY STORE

Google Play is the place to go to find new Android apps, books, movies, and music for your phone. Choose from a wide variety of free and paid content ranging from productivity apps and games to bestselling books and blockbuster movies and music. When you find what you want, you can easily download and install it on your phone.

To access the Google Play store app, you must first connect to the Internet using your phone's Wi-Fi or mobile data connection and sign in to your Google Account. See <u>Sign In to Your Google</u> Account for details.

# Installing Applications

Many different kinds of applications can be installed on your phone from Google Play (provided by Google Inc.). The company is not responsible in any way for user-installed applications (quality, reliability, legality, fitness for a purpose, credibility, accuracy, etc.) or resulting malfunctions (viruses, etc.).

**Important**: Our policies often do not apply to third-party applications. Third-party applications may access your personal information or require us to disclose your customer information to the third-party application provider. To find out how a third-party application will collect, access, use, or disclose your personal information, check the application provider's policies, which can usually be found on their website. If you aren't comfortable with the third-party application's policies, don't use the application.

## Find and Install an App

When you install apps from Google Play app and use them on your phone, they may require access to your personal information (such as your location, contact data, and more) or access to certain functions or settings on your phone. Download and install only apps that you trust.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. When you open the Google Play Store app for the first time, the Terms of Service window will appear. Tap **ACCEPT** to continue.
- 3. Browse through the categories (APPS, GAMES, MOVIES & TV, MUSIC, BOOKS, or NEWSSTAND), find an item you're interested in, and tap the name.
  - Browse through featured apps. Scroll through the list of featured apps when you open Google Play.
  - Browse apps recommended by Virgin Mobile. Tap **APPS** > **VIRGIN MOBILE**, and then scroll through the list.
  - Search for an app. Tap Q on the Google Play home screen, enter the name or type of app you're looking for, and then tap Q on the keyboard.
- 4. Tap an app to read a description about the app and user reviews.
- 5. Tap **Install** (for free applications) or the price (for paid applications).

**Note**: You need a Google Wallet account to purchase items on Google Play. See <u>Google Wallet</u> to set up a Google Wallet account if you do not have one.

- 6. The subsequent screen notifies you whether the app will require access to your personal information or access to certain functions or settings of your phone. If you agree to the conditions, tap **ACCEPT** (for free apps) or **ACCEPT** and then **BUY** (for paid apps) to begin downloading and installing the app.
  - If you selected a paid application, after tapping **OK**, you're redirected to the Google Wallet screen to pay for the application before it's downloaded to your phone.
  - The selected app is downloaded and installed on your phone.

**Warning**: **Read the notification carefully!** Be especially cautious with applications that have access to many functions or a significant amount of your data. Once you tap **OK** on this screen, you are responsible for the results of using this item on your phone.

**Tip**: Apps sometimes get updated with improvements or bug fixes. To automatically download updates, after installing, tap • > Auto-update.

# Purchasing Applications

Purchase apps at your own risk. The company is not responsible for any disadvantage resulting from use of third party apps.

# Request a Refund for a Paid App

If you are not satisfied with an app, you can ask for a refund within 15 minutes of the purchase. Your credit card is not charged and the app is uninstalled from your phone.

If you change your mind, you can install the app again, but you can't request a refund a second time.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap == > **My apps**.
- 3. Tap the app to uninstall for a refund. The details screen for the app opens.
- 4. Tap **REFUND**, and then tap **YES** to confirm. Your app is uninstalled and the charge is cancelled.

## Update an App

Depending on your settings, many apps will update automatically, or you can update apps directly from the Play Store app.

### **Update an App Directly**

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap == > **My apps**.
- 3. Tap the app you want to update, and then tap **UPDATE** > **ACCEPT**.
- The app update is downloaded and installed.

#### Set Automatic Updates

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap => Settings > Auto-update apps.
- 3. Tap an auto-update option, such as auto-update apps over Wi-Fi only.

Note: Automatic updates are unavailable for some apps.

# Uninstall an App

You can uninstall any app that you have downloaded and installed from Google Play.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap => My apps.
- 3. On the **INSTALLED** tab, tap the app you want to uninstall, and then tap **UNINSTALL** > **OK**.
- The app is uninstalled and removed from your phone.

## Get Help with Google Play

The Google Play store app offers an online help option if you have questions or want to know more about the app.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap == > Help & Feedback.
  - The Web browser will take you to the Google Play Help Web page, where you will find comprehensive, categorized information about Google Play.

## LOCK AND UNLOCK YOUR SCREEN

Your phone allows you to quickly turn the screen off when not in use and to turn it back on and unlock it when you need it.

#### Turn the Screen Off When Not in Use

■ To quickly turn the screen off, press the **Power/Lock Button**. Pressing the **Power/Lock Button** again or receiving an incoming call will turn on your phone screen and show the lock screen.

To save battery power, the phone automatically turns off the screen after a certain period of time when you leave it idle. You will still be able to receive messages and calls while the phone's screen is off.

**Note**: For information on how to adjust the time before the screen turns off, see <u>Display & Gestures</u> Settings.

#### Unlock the Screen

Unlock the screen to receive an incoming call or to access your phone.

- 1. When the screen is off, press the **Power/Lock Button** to show the lock screen.
- 2. You can either:
  - Drag the lock icon **1** up.



• Flick a shortcut icon to directly launch the app.

**Tip**: If you've set an event reminder or an alarm, you can snooze or dismiss the event or alarm right from the lock screen. Just drag  $\bigcirc$  or  $\times$  up.

# **UPDATE YOUR PHONE**

From time to time, updates may become available for your phone. You can download and apply updates through the Settings > System updates menu.

#### Software Update Cautions

**During update**: The phone cannot be used until the software update is complete. It may take time to update your phone's software.

**Signal during update**: Update your phone where signal reception is good, and do not change location during the update process. Make sure the battery is adequately charged before beginning an update. A weak signal or low battery during an update may cause the update to fail. An update failure may disable the phone.

**Other functions during update**: Other phone functions cannot be used during a software update.

### **Update Your Phone Software**

You can update your phone's software using the System updates option.

#### **Before Updating Your Phone**

Updating your phone may result in a loss of saved data depending on the condition of your phone (malfunctioning, damaged, water seepage, etc.). You must back up all critical information before updating your phone firmware.

**Note**: Updating your phone firmware may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

#### Back Up All Data Prior to Update

To back up your Gmail information:

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎ > Accounts & sync.
- 2. Do any of the following:
  - Turn on the **Autosync** option. When Auto-sync is on, Gmail email, Calendar, and Contacts automatically synchronize whenever a change is made.
  - Tap **Google**, select the Google Account you want to back up, and then select the items you want to synchronize. Tap **3** > **Sync now** to sync your Google Account information.

To back up your Google applications:

Applications you've purchased from Google Play are reloaded remotely and can be re-installed after the update is applied. After the update, make sure that you add your Google Account on the phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap == > **My apps**.
- 3. Swipe to the **ALL** tab, and then tap the app you want to restore.
- 4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

As an added precaution, to preserve any data on your microSD card, please unmount it from your phone prior to starting the update process.

■ Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎ > Storage > Unmount SD card.

#### **Update the Operating System**

This option allows you to update the phone's operating system (OS) via an over-the-air connection.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ Settings > System updates.
- 2. Tap HTC software update > CHECK NOW.

**Note**: If you want to conserve data usage, you can select the **Update over Wi-Fi only** option before you tap **CHECK NOW**.

- 3. Follow onscreen instructions to download and install any available updates.
  - Your phone automatically downloads and installs any available updates. You may be required to power your phone off and back on to complete the software upgrade.

#### **Confirm Your Current Phone Firmware**

- Tap △> ⇒ Settings ② > About > Software information.
- \* The software version is displayed.

# **Update Your Profile**

This option allows you to automatically update your online user profile information. If you choose to change your user name and select a new one online, you must then update the user name on your phone.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Settings > System updates.
- 2. Tap **Update profile** and follow onscreen instructions.
  - The phone will download and install the profile update and you will see a confirmation when complete.

**Note**: If your data services or account syncing ever seems to go out unexpectedly, use this feature to reconnect with the network.

## **Update Your PRL**

This option allows you to automatically download and update the PRL (preferred roaming list).

- 1. Tap 

  → Settings 

  > System updates.
- 2. Tap **Update PRL** and follow onscreen instructions.
  - The phone will download and install the PRL update and you will see a confirmation when complete.

# YOUR PHONE INTERFACE

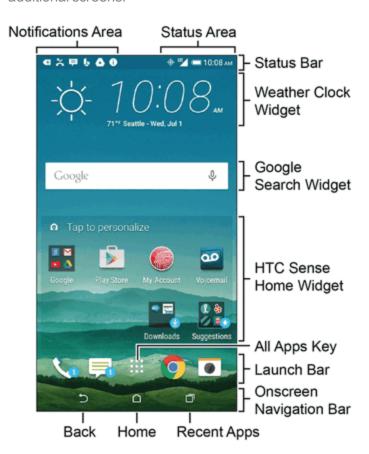
The following topics describe how to use and customize your phone's home screen, understand the status bar, and use the notifications window.

## HOME SCREEN BASICS

The home screen is the starting point for your phone's applications, functions, and menus. You can customize your home screen by adding application icons, shortcuts, folders, widgets, and more.

### Home Screen Layout

Your home screen extends beyond the initial screen. Swipe the screen left or right to display additional screens.



| Item | Description  |
|------|--|
|      | The status bar displays icons to notify you of your phone's status (on the right side) and notifications (on the left side).                     |
|      | The notification area of the status bar (on the left) displays notifications for incoming messages, missed calls, application updates, and more. |

| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Status Area      | The status area of the status bar (on the right) displays phone and service status information such as signal strength, battery status, Wi-Fi and data connectivity, ringer status, and time. |
| Widgets          | Widgets are self-contained onscreen apps that reside on your phone's home screen.   |
| Launch Bar       | Primary shortcuts are application shortcuts that appear in the same location on all of your phone's home screens. These are customizable except for the All Apps Key, which remains static.   |
| All Apps Key ::: | Tap to open the applications (apps) list. The apps list key is a primary shortcut available from all home screens.  |
| Back Key 5       | Tap to open a context-specific options menu.  |
| Home Key 🗅       | Tap to display the main home screen.  |
| Recent Apps Key  | Tap to return to the previous screen.   |

**Tip**: Tap **Home**  $\triangle$  to return to the main home screen from any other screen.

## Extended Home Screens - Widget Panels

In addition to the main home screen, your phone features extended home screens to provide more space for adding icons, widgets, and more. Tap **Home** to display the home screen and then drag across the screen to move from the home screen to another widget panel.

There are up to four widget panels available in addition to the home screen.

- If you are not already using the maximum number of panels for your phone, you can add more panels. Touch and hold an empty space in any widget panel, tap Manage Home screen pages, and then tap +.
- While on any screen, tap **Home** to return to the main home screen.
- When you swipe left or right from the home screen, the small circles above the launch bar let you know your current screen position.

# STATUS BAR

The status bar at the top of the home screen provides phone and service status information on the right side and notification alerts on the left. To view the notifications window or access the quick settings menu, tap the status bar and drag it down.

### 

### **Main Notification Icons**

| lcon      | Notification                                   |
|-----------|--|
| ((··))    | Mobile Hotspot is on                           |
| 早         | New text or MMS message                        |
| 00        | New voicemail                                  |
| M         | New Gmail message                              |
|           | New email                                      |
| 1         | Event  |
| <b>•</b>  | Music is playing                               |
|           | Power saver mode is on                         |
| ψ         | General notification (for example, sync error) |
| •         | More notifications available (tap to view)     |
| ×         | Missed call                                    |
| · ·       | Call in progress                               |
| <u>+</u>  | Downloading                                    |
| <u> </u>  | Uploading                                      |
| <u>†©</u> | Waiting to upload                              |
| Ŷ         | USB connection                                 |
| Ô         | Update successful                              |

### Main Status Icons

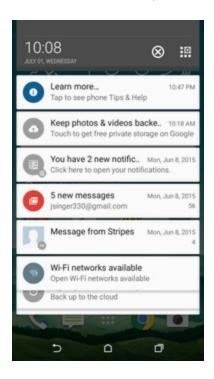
| lcon     | Status                |
|----------|-----------------------|
| *        | Bluetooth active      |
| <b></b>  | GPS active            |
| •        | Wi-Fi active          |
| <u> </u> | Vibrate               |
| 3        | Speakerphone active   |
| 4        | Network (full signal) |
| Δ        | Network (roaming)     |

| Icon     | Status                                     |
|----------|--|
| LTE      | 4G LTE data service                        |
| 3G       | 3G data service                            |
| <b>十</b> | Airplane mode                              |
| Φ        | Data synchronizing – connected to HTC Sync |
| Ø        | Alarm set                                  |
| *        | Battery (charging)                         |
| <b>(</b> | Battery (full charge)                      |

## NOTIFICATIONS PANEL

When you see notification icons, open the Notifications panel to check out details of the notifications that you've received. You can also quickly access settings from the Notifications panel.

1. Slide down from the top of the screen to open the Notifications panel.



- 2. On the Notifications panel:
  - Some notifications allow you to take immediate action. For example, tap a missed call notification to return the call or reply with a text message.
  - Tap the notification icon on the left to open the corresponding app.

• To dismiss just one notification in the list, drag it left or right. To dismiss all notifications and close the Notifications panel, tap  $\bigotimes$ .

Tip: If you have several notifications, scroll through the list screen to see them all.

# Manage App Notifications

You can set the priority of app notifications or completely block notifications for apps you don't want to be notified about.

- 1. Tap ♠> Settings ♥ > Sound & notification.
- 2. Tap **App notifications**, and then tap the app you want manage. You can also touch and hold a notification, and then tap ①.
- 3. Tap the **ON/OFF** switch next to **Block** or **Priority** depending on what you want to do.
  - Settings for app notifications are applied to notifications in the Notifications panel and the lock screen.

# FRONT INDICATOR LIGHT (LED)

The Front Indicator Light (LED) provides phone information at a glance.



The indicator shows:

- Solid green light when your phone is connected to the power adapter or a computer and the battery is fully charged.
- Flashing green light when you have a pending notification (for example, a new message or a missed call).
- Solid orange light when the battery is being charged.
- Flashing orange light when the battery level reaches very low. (Power is below 14%.)

# Change LED Notification Settings

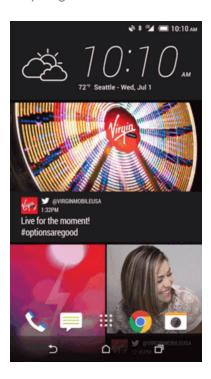
You can change when to flash and which apps will flash the LED when there are new notifications.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ Settings © > Sound & notification.
- 2. Under Notification, tap **Flash notifications**. Choose whether to always flash the LED or flash it only when the screen is off.
- 3. Tap **App light notifications**. Choose which app notifications you want the LED to flash for.

**Tip**: In other apps, check their settings to find out if they have an option for flashing the LED.

## HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen

Stay in touch with friends or get the latest about your interests right on HTC BlinkFeed. Set up which social networks, news sources, and other information will appear. To go to HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right from the Home screen.



- Swipe up or down to browse stories on HTC BlinkFeed.
- Tap a tile to view more details or to comment on a post or status update.
- While viewing a news article, swipe left or right to see more stories.
- While in HTC BlinkFeed, you can tap either or to scroll to the top.
- Scroll to the top and pull down on the screen to manually refresh the stream.
- Swipe right on HTC BlinkFeed to open the slideout menu to choose the type or add your custom topics to display.

**Tip**: You'll see the clock widget on HTC BlinkFeed if you've set HTC BlinkFeed as the main Home screen.

#### Turn HTC BlinkFeed On or Off

You can turn HTC BlinkFeed on or off.

- 1. Tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Slide two fingers together, and then tap  $\Delta$ .
- 3. While HTC BlinkFeed is selected, tap **REMOVE**.
- 4. To add it back, swipe right, and then tap the + button that has **BLINKFEED**.

#### Add Content to HTC BlinkFeed

Personalize HTC BlinkFeed to show articles and status updates from your favorite news sources, categories, editions, and apps.

#### Select Feeds

Discover stories and articles on HTC BlinkFeed based on your interests, favorite categories, and popular news channels or websites.

- 1. Tap or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap > Add content.
- 4. Choose a category.
- 5. Select one or more feed sources. You can tap a name first to check out a particular feed, and then tap to add it to HTC BlinkFeed.

#### Show Content From Your Apps and Social Networks

See your friends' posts in social networks or show content from your HTC apps right on HTC BlinkFeed.

Note: You need to sign in to your social networks to see their feeds on HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. Tap or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap Services & Apps.
- 4. Select the apps and social networks you like.

#### Search and Add Topics of Interest

You can search for and select topics of interest to display them on HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. Tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap **Search for content**, and then enter the topic you're looking for.
- 4. Tap a result, and then tap to add it under Custom topics.

#### Subscribe to Multiple Regional Editions

By default, HTC BlinkFeed display feeds and information available for your current location. You can show one or more editions of your choice on HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. Tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap > Add content.
- 4. Tap ▼, and then select a locale or region.
- 5. Select the feed sources to add.

#### Customize the Highlights Feed

Go to the Highlights feed to see a mix of top trending articles and status updates from the feed sources you added. You can also set the Highlights feed to only show items from your favorite news sources, categories, and apps.

**Note**: You cannot add custom topics to the Highlights feed.

- 1. Tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap > Settings > Choose Highlights topics.
- 4. Select the feed sources you want to appear in Highlights.

#### Save Articles for Later

You can bookmark articles to your reading list so you can read them later.

- Do one of the following:
  - While viewing an article, tap  $\blacksquare$ .
  - On HTC BlinkFeed, touch and hold the tile of the article you want to bookmark, and then tap **Read later**.

You'll find the reading list in the slideout menu.

#### Post to Your Social Networks

You can easily post a status update from HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. Tap  $\hat{\Omega}$  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
- 2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
- 3. Tap > Compose, and then choose a social network.
- 4. Compose your status update and post it on your social network.

#### Remove Content From HTC BlinkFeed

Whether it's a tile or an entire feed, you can remove content you don't want to see on HTC BlinkFeed.

- To remove a tile, touch and hold the tile you want to remove, and then tap **Remove**.
- To remove a feed source, in the slideout menu, tap > Remove content, select one or more items, and then tap REMOVE.
- To unsubscribe to a localized edition, in the slideout menu, tap 

  Remove content. On the Remove content screen, tap 

  Remove editions, select one or more items, and then tap REMOVE.

## CUSTOMIZE THE HOME SCREEN

Learn how to set the wallpaper and add, move, or remove shortcuts, widgets, and folders from the home screen. Your phone allows you to change the wallpaper, add or remove widget panels, change your main Home screen, and add shortcuts, folders, and widgets at any time.

# Change the Wallpaper

Choose from the available wallpapers, or use any photo you've taken with the camera.

- 1. Tap and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
- 2. In the pop-up menu, tap Change Home screen wallpaper.
- 3. Choose from where you want to select a wallpaper.
  - To use a wallpaper stored on your phone, tap HTC wallpapers or Live wallpapers.
  - Tap Themes to use a wallpaper stored in your Theme's gallery. See Themes for details.
  - To use a photo you captured with the camera, tap **Gallery**, choose and crop a photo, and then tap **DONE**.
  - Tap **Photos** to select a wallpaper from photos stored in Google Photos app.

## Customize the Launch Bar

The launch bar on your Home screen gives you one-tap access to commonly used apps and other shortcuts. You can replace the apps on the launch bar with other apps that you often use.

1. Touch and hold the app you want to replace, and then drag it out to  $\blacksquare$ .



- 2. Tap to go to the Apps screen.
- 3. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it to the empty slot on the launch bar.

**Tip**: You can also group apps on the launch bar into a folder.

**Note**: The apps or shortcuts you see on the lock screen are the same as the ones in the launch bar.

## Change Your Main Home Screen

Set HTC BlinkFeed or a widget panel as your main Home screen.

- 1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
- 2. In the pop-up menu, tap Manage Home screen pages.
- 3. Swipe left or right until you see the panel that you want to use as your main Home screen.
- 4. Tap **SET AS HOME**.
- 5. Tap **5**.

**Note**: Tapping  $\Omega$  from an app will first return you to the last panel you were in. Just tap  $\Omega$  again to go to your main Home screen.

# Organize Your Widget Panels

Organize your widget panels depending on your needs.

### Add or Remove a Widget Panel

Note: You won't be able to add a new widget panel if you've already reached the maximum limit.

**Note**: If it's not removed, HTC BlinkFeed always appears as the first panel. A widget panel cannot be inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
- 2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Manage Home screen pages**.
- 3. To add a new widget panel, swipe until you see the + icon, and then tap it.
- 4. To remove a widget panel, swipe left or right until you see the panel, and then tap **REMOVE**.
- 5. Tap **5**.

## Arrange Widget Panels

**Note:** A widget panel cannot be moved or inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.

- 1. On HTC BlinkFeed or any widget panel, slide two fingers together to customize the Home screen.
- 2. Touch and hold a widget panel thumbnail, and then drag it left or right to the position you want.
- 3. Tap **5**.

## Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts

Add widgets and app shortcuts to the Home screen.

#### Add Widgets on Your Home Screen

Widgets make at-a-glance important information and media content easily available. Choose from a selection of widgets and add the most useful ones to your Home screen.

- 1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
- 2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Add apps and widgets**.
- Tap ▼ > Widgets.
- 4. Scroll through the widgets or tap  $\mathbf{Q}$  to search for specific widgets. Some widgets are available in different styles and sizes.
- 5. Touch and hold a widget, and then drag it to a widget panel you want to add it to.

You can also add widgets that allow you to quickly switch on or off certain settings such as Bluetooth and GPS.

### Change the Widget Settings

You can modify basic settings of some widgets (for example, the Clock widget) from the Home screen. Some widgets can also be resized after you've added them to your Home screen.

- Touch and hold the widget on your Home screen, and then drag it to . You can then customize the widget settings.
- To resize the widget, touch and hold the widget. If a border appears around the widget, drag the sides of the border to enlarge or shrink the widget size.

## Add Apps and Other Shortcuts on Your Home Screen

Place apps you often use on your Home screen. You can also add shortcuts to frequently used settings, bookmarked Web pages, and more.

- 1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
- 2. In the pop-up menu, tap Add apps and widgets.
- Tap ▼ > Apps or Shortcuts.
- 4. Scroll through the apps or shortcuts, or tap Q to search for one.
- 5. Touch and hold an app or shortcut icon, and then drag it to a widget panel where you want to add it.

**Note**: To add an app from the Apps screen, touch and hold an app and drag it to a widget panel.

### Move or Remove Items on Your Home Screen

- 1. Touch and hold the widget or app shortcut you want to move or remove.
- 2. To move the item to another position on the same panel, just drag it to a new area and then release it.
- 3. To move the item to another Home screen panel, flick left or right to rotate the screen to another widget panel, and then release it.



4. To remove the item, drag it to  $\blacksquare$ , and when the item turns red, release it.

## HTC Sense Home Widget

Get quick access to apps, shortcuts and folders you use most frequently based on where you are. With the HTC Sense Home widget, HTC Desire 626s continually adapts to how you use it. For example, apps you use most frequently for work will show up when you're at your office. The HTC Sense Home widget changes depending on whether you're at home, work, or somewhere else.

### Set Up the HTC Sense Home Widget

Setting up the HTC Sense Home widget is quick and easy.

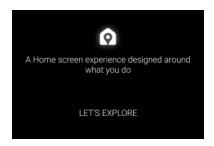
**Tip**: If you don't see the HTC Sense Home widget, add it to your Home screen. See <u>Work with</u> Widgets and App Shortcuts.

Note: Make sure you turn on location services in your phone settings. See Location Settings.

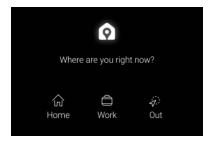
1. On the HTC Sense Home widget, tap **Tap to personalize**.



2. Tap LET'S EXPLORE.



3. Tap where you are to finish setting up the widget.



- 4. On the widget, tap ✓> ♣ > Personalize HTC Sense Home.
- 5. Select all the options on the screen, and then tap **5**.

#### Set Your Home and Work Locations

You can change the address for your home and work locations if you ever move to a new home or change your job.

- 1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
- 2. On the widget, tap > ✓ > ♣ > Set locations.
- 3. Tap the address area to search for the address you want to set.
- 4. When you've found the address on the map, tap **DONE**.

## **Switch Locations Manually**

The HTC Sense Home widget automatically changes locations based on where you are. You can also manually change the location in the HTC Sense Home widget.

For the HTC Sense Home widget to change locations automatically, you need to make sure that HTC Location Service is turned on. See HTC Location Service.

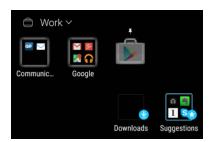
- 1. On your Home screen, slide right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
- 2. Tap  $\checkmark$ , and then tap the location you want.

### Pin and Unpin Apps

Pinning apps, shortcuts, or folders to the HTC Sense Home widget ensures they stay on the widget. Items in the HTC Sense Home widget will have one of two states: pinned or unpinned. Unpinned items will be automatically changed to more frequently used items.

- 1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
- 2. Do one of the following:

To pin an item, touch and hold it until you see .



• To unpin an item, touch and hold it until the unpinning progress bar has completed.

### Add Apps to the HTC Sense Home Widget

Add your favorite apps, shortcuts, or folders to the HTC Sense Home widget.

- 2. Touch and hold the app, shortcut, or folder you want to add to the widget.
- 3. Drag the item to where you want in the HTC Sense Home widget.
- 4. The app, shortcut or folder will be added to the HTC Sense Home widget and pinned in place.

#### Turn Smart Folders On and Off

Smart folders are folders in the HTC Sense Home widget that dynamically change contents depending on the apps you download and use. If you don't want to see recently downloaded or recommended apps, you can turn off the smart folders.

- 1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
- 2. Tap ✓, and then tap > Show/hide smart folders.
- 3. Select the smart folders you want to show or hide.
- 4. Tap **OK**.

## Customize the Lock Screen

Use the home wallpaper, or use any photo you've taken with the camera as the lock screen wallpaper.

### Change the Lock Screen Wallpaper

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ Settings ◎ > Personalize.
- 2. Tap Change wallpaper below LOCK SCREEN.
- 3. Tap any of the following options:

- Tap Use home screen wallpaper or tap Use custom wallpaper to select a photo from Gallery.
- Tap Themes to use a wallpaper stored in your Theme's gallery. See Themes for details.
- Tap **Photos** to select a wallpaper from photos stored in Google Photos app.

#### Set a Screen Lock

Help protect your personal information and help prevent others from using HTC Desire 626s without your permission. Choose to set a screen lock pattern, numeric PIN, or other means of securing your phone. You'll be asked to unlock the screen every time HTC Desire 626s is turned on or when it's idle for a certain period of time.

- Tap △> Settings ② > Security.
- 2. Tap Screen lock.
- 3. Select a screen lock option and set up the screen lock.
- 4. Tap **Lock phone after** then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

You can also clear **Make pattern visible** or **Make passwords visible** if you don't want your screen lock to display as you enter it onscreen.

### Set up Smart Lock

Set up your phone to detect your face or another trusted device before you can unlock the screen.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Settings ② > Security.
- 2. Tap **Screen lock**, and then select and set up a screen lock.
  - This will be your backup screen lock method to use in case the phone doesn't recognize you or a trusted device
- 3. On the Security screen, tap **Smart Lock**.
- 4. Confirm your screen lock.
- 5. Tap **Trusted face** and follow the onscreen instructions.
- 6. Tap **Lock phone after** then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

To help make Smart Lock more reliable and more secure, you can to train HTC Desire 626s to recognize your face in different situations, such as when you're wearing glasses or sporting a beard.

 Tap Smart Lock, confirm your screen lock, and then tap Trusted face > Improve face matching. Follow the onscreen instructions.

### Change Lock Screen Shortcuts

To change apps (or other shortcuts) on the lock screen, change the ones on the launch bar. To find out how, see **Customize the Launch Bar**.

#### Turn Off the Lock Screen

You can turn the lock screen off in Settings.

- Tap □ > :::: > Settings □ > Security.
- 2. Tap Screen lock > No lock screen.

To turn the lock screen on again, in Security settings, tap **Screen lock > Lock screen**.

## Lock Screen Notifications

On the lock screen, you can see notifications such as missed calls, text messages, calendar events, and more.

#### Turn Lock Screen Notifications On or Off

You can choose to turn lock screen notifications on or off.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ Settings © > Sound & notification.
- 2. Tap When device is locked > Don't show notifications at all.

If you change your mind later, you can tap **Show all notification content** to turn lock screen notifications on.

#### Interact with Lock Screen Notifications

Besides seeing notifications on the lock screen, you can also interact with them.

- 1. Tap twice on a notification to go directly to the related app.
- 2. To see the entire list of notifications on the lock screen, swipe down on the lock screen. You can tap on a blank area of the screen to return to the lock screen.
- 3. Swipe left or right on the notification to remove it.
- 4. Touch and hold a notification to see more related information.
- 5. Tap ① to prioritize or block notifications from the related app.

# **THEMES**

Themes brings a quick and easy way for you to customize your phone with wallpapers, sounds, and more. Log in with your HTC Account to browse from the available themes in the Themes store, or

make your own.



## **Download Themes**

Find and download pre-made themes that make it easy for you to personalize your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes <sup>®</sup>
- 2. Tap GET STARTED.
- 3. Sign in with your preferred account.
- 4. On the Recommended screen, swipe left or right under each category to browse recommended items.
- 5. To see all available items for a category, swipe left and tap **See all**.
- 6. Tap an item to see the details screen.
- 7. Tap **Download**.

To apply the theme after it has finished downloading, tap **Apply**. If your theme has custom sounds, all of your ringtones and alert tones will also change.

## **Bookmark Themes**

While browsing themes, you can bookmark them so you can easily find them later.

- Tap △> : :: > Themes ●
- 2. Browse the categories to find something you like.
- 3. Tap the item and then tap . You'll find the bookmark in **My themes**. See <u>Find Your Themes</u>.

**Tip**: You can remove the bookmark by tapping **P** again.

### Create Themes

You can create and customize your own theme and even share it for others to download.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes <sup>®</sup>
- 2. Tap + > Choose Home image to set the main wallpaper for your theme.
- 3. Select an image from Gallery, Photos, or take a photo with Camera.
- 4. Crop the image when prompted, and then tap **DONE**.
- 5. Tap **NEXT**.
- 6. Swipe up or down to the pre-defined style to select for your theme.
- 7. If you don't want to customize your theme further, tap **NEXT** to save your theme.
- 8. Tap **EDIT**, then tap any of the categories you want to customize, and experiment with the settings until you're satisfied.
- 9. When you're ready, tap **PREVIEW** to see what your theme will look like.
- 10. Tap **FINISH**, then name your theme and tap **OK** to save your theme.

**Tip**: To apply the theme right away, make sure you select the **Apply this theme now** option.

#### Edit a Theme

After creating a theme, you can still edit it.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes <sup>®</sup>.
- 2. Tap => My themes > My current theme.
- 3. Swipe to the MY COLLECTION tab, and then tap Edit current theme.
- 4. Make the changes you want to the theme.
- 5. Tap **SAVE** to update the current theme.

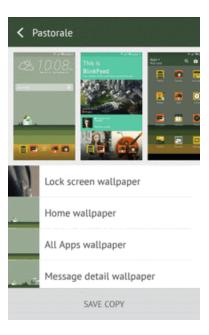
## Mix and Match Themes

After selecting a theme, you can mix and match parts from other themes such as sounds, wallpapers, and more.

**Note**: To mix and match themes, you need to first download theme components from the catalog.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes ●.
- 2. Tap == > **My themes**.
- 3. Swipe to the MY COLLECTION tab, and then tap Edit current theme.
- 4. Tap **Color** and select a color scheme.
- 5. Tap any of the other categories you want to change.

- 7. Tap **Apply** to apply the change to your current theme.
- 8. Tap \( \square\) until you see the mix and match screen. Continue making changes until you're satisfied with the result.



9. Tap **SAVE COPY** to save your new theme, or if you're editing a theme that you copied tap **SAVE** to save the changes.

## Find Your Themes

Themes you created or downloaded can be found in your theme collection. You'll also find the theme you bookmarked.

- Tap △> :::: > Themes ●
- 2. Tap == > **My themes**.

## **Share Themes**

Share themes, wallpapers, icons, and more with friends and family.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes ●.
- 2. Browse to the theme you want to share and tap it to view the details.
- 3. While viewing the details page of any item in the catalog, tap \*\* to share.

## Delete a Theme

You can delete a theme if you no longer want to keep it on your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Themes <sup>⑤</sup>.
- 2. Tap == > **My themes**.
- 3. Swipe to the MY COLLECTION tab.
- 4. Tap > **Remove**.
- 5. Tap the themes you want to remove from your collection.
- 6. Tap **REMOVE**.

If the theme you deleted is currently applied, it will still be applied to your phone until another theme is applied.

# PHONE APP

The following topics outline the use of your device's phone app to place and receive calls, use voicemail, set up and manage contacts, and more.

## PLACE AND ANSWER CALLS

The following topics describe how to directly dial calls, how to answer incoming calls, and how to use the in-call screen options.

### Adjust In-Call Volume

Adjusting Call Volume: Press the Volume Button during the call.

### **Troubleshooting**

Question: Difficulty during call.

**Answer 1**: It may not be possible to make a call properly in a noisy location.

**Answer 2**: When calling using Speaker, check the call volume. Raising the call volume may make calling difficult.

Question: Sound pops momentarily during a call.

**Answer**: Are you changing location while calling? Sound pops when signal is weak and the phone switches to a different area.

## Emergency Call Cautions

Emergency calls are restricted in Airplane mode.

# Call Using the Phone Dialer

The most "traditional" way to place a call is by using the phone's dialer screen.

### **Call Using Smart Dial**

You can either dial a number directly, or use Smart dial to quickly place a call. Smart dial searches and calls a stored/synced contact or a number from your call history.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\triangle$  to display the phone's dialer screen.
- 2. Enter the phone number or first few letters of the contact's name to see the top matching contact.

3. If there are a number of matches found (for example, 3 MATCHES), tap the number to see all the matches.



- 4. Tap the contact you want to call.
  - To check other phone numbers associated with the contact, tap beside the contact name.
  - If the phone number has an extension, tap after connecting to the main line and then dial the extension number.
- 5. To hang up, tap END CALL.

## Change the Phone Dialer Layout

Switch between a large or standard dial keypad.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle$  > \( \square\$ to display the phone's dialer screen.
- 2. Tap > Large dial pad or Standard dial pad.

### **Troubleshooting**

Question: Call does not connect.

**Answer 1**: Was the number dialed using the area code? Try dialing the number starting with "0."

**Answer 2**: Are you in an area with poor wireless coverage? Try calling again from another area.

### Dial an Extension Number

To skip voice prompts when dialing an extension number, do one of the following.

■ After dialing the main number, touch and hold ★ . The letter **p** is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then tap CALL. You will be connected to the mainline and then to the extension number.

• After dialing the main number, touch and hold \* . The letter w is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then tap CALL . After connecting to the main line, tap SEND to dial the extension number.

**Tip**: You can save phone numbers with an extension in the People app.

### Call Emergency Numbers

You can place calls to 9-1-1 even if the phone's screen is locked or your account is restricted.

**Important**: You won't be able to make an emergency call if you don't have a network signal.

- 1. Unlock the screen. For more information, see Lock and Unlock Your Screen.
- 2. Tap \( \bigcirc > \sqrt{.}
- 3. Tap 9 WXYZ 100 100 CALL
  - As long as you are in an area covered by wireless service, the emergency call is placed.

**Note**: When your account is restricted or if you've enabled but forgotten your lock password or lock pattern, you can still make emergency calls by tapping **EMERGENCY CALL** on the screen.

### Enhanced 9-1-1 (E 9-1-1) Information

This phone features an embedded Global Positioning System (GPS) chip necessary for utilizing E 9-1-1 emergency location services where available.

When you place an emergency 9-1-1 call, the GPS feature of your phone seeks information to calculate your approximate location. Depending on several variables, including availability and access to satellite signals, it may take up to 30 seconds or more to determine and report your approximate location.

**Important**: Always report your location to the 9-1-1 operator when placing an emergency call. Some designated emergency call takers, known as Public Safety Answering Points (PSAPs), may not be equipped to receive GPS location information from your phone.

#### Call Using a Speed Dial Number

Speed dial numbers let you dial numbers by touching and holding a single number on the Phone keypad.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\triangle$  to display the phone dialer's screen.
- 2. Touch and hold the speed dial key on the Phone keypad. The display confirms that you have dialed the number when it shows "DIALING" on the upper right side of the screen.

See Set Up Speed Dial for information on assigning speed dial numbers.

## Call a Number in a Text Message, Email Message, or Calendar Event

While viewing a text message, email, or a Calendar event that has a phone number in it, you can just tap the phone number to place a call.

• For additional information, see Text and Multimedia Messaging, Email, and Calendar.

#### Make International Calls

When placing international calls, plus code dialing automatically adds the international dialing code for your location (for example, 011 for international calls made from the U.S.).

Note: Make sure the North American dialing option is enabled by tapping  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings  $\bigcirc >$  Call > CDMA call settings > Plus code dialing.

**Note**: To call someone in your contacts list, the stored phone number needs to have a "+" sign followed by the country code, area code, and phone number.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Enter the first few letters of a contact name, and then tap a contact to call. If you don't have the number stored, touch and hold the  $0^+$  until a "+" sign appears. Then enter the country code, area code, and phone number, and tap  $^{\text{CALL}}$ .
  - \* The Phone dialer automatically adds your international dialing code to the number.

**Note**: The Phone dialer dials as is and doesn't automatically add your international access code when you dial a phone number that has a "+1" in front or when there's no plus sign in front of the number.

**Important**: International calls may incur additional fees. Contact Virgin Mobile customer service for details.

### Change the International Dialing Code

By default, the international dialing code is set to 011. When you're traveling in another country, you can set the international dialing code to your current location.

- Tap △ > Settings ② > Call.
- 2. Tap CDMA call settings > Plus code dialing > International dialing.
- 3. Enter the dialing code of the country where you're located, and then tap **OK**.

## Set Up Speed Dial

Your phone can store up to eight phone numbers in speed dial locations. (The number 1 is reserved for Virgin Mobile voicemail access.)

To assign a speed dial number to a contact:

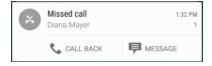
- 1. Tap △> ⇒ People ■, and then tap a contact.
- 2. Tap > Set speed dial.
- 3. Tap **Not assigned** under Number to select the contact's number that you want to assign to the speed dial key.
- 4. Tap **Not assigned** under Location and then select a speed dial location.
- 5. Tap **SAVE**.

**Note**: If you assign a number to an already assigned speed dial location, the new phone number will automatically replace the previous speed dial assignment.

### Return a Missed Call

You'll see this icon  $\stackrel{\textstyle \star}{\sim}$  in the status bar when you missed a call.

- 1. Slide the Notifications panel open to check who the caller is.
- 2. To return the call, spread your two fingers on the missed call notification to expand it, and then tap **CALL BACK**.



Tip: You can also tap the notification to display call history and then tap the entry to call it.

**Tip**: If you have multiple missed calls, tap the missed calls notification to open the **CALL HISTORY** tab.

### Answer Phone Calls

The following information lets you know how to answer incoming calls, mute the ringer on incoming calls, reject incoming calls, and more.

When you receive a phone call from a contact, the Incoming call screen appears and displays the caller ID icon, name, and phone number of the calling party. When you receive a phone call from someone who is not stored in People, only the default caller ID icon and phone number appear on the Incoming call screen.

**Note**: Your phone will automatically adjust the ringtone volume when you use the polite ringer and pocket mode features.

**Note**: If your phone is turned off, all calls automatically go to voicemail.

## Answer or Reject an Incoming Call

- If the display is on when you get a call, tap ANSWER or DECLINE.
- If the display is locked when you get a call, drag or upwards.
- You can also press the Power/Lock Button twice to reject a call.

**Tip**: After declining a call, you can send a text message to the caller or create a task to remind you to return the call. All declined calls go to your voicemail.

## Mute the Ringing Sound without Rejecting the Call

- Press the Volume Button.
- Briefly press the Power/Lock Button.
- Place the phone face down on a level surface. (You can do this even on the lock screen.)

**Note**: If your phone is already facing down, it will still ring when there are subsequent incoming calls.

## In-Call Screen Layout and Operations

While you're on a call, you will see a number of onscreen options.



■ Mute <sup>1</sup> : Mute the microphone during an active call. Tap again to unmute the microphone.

**Note**: If Mute is activated, the speaker mode is deactivated.

- **Speaker** Route the phone's audio through the speaker (On) or through the earpiece (Off).
  - Activate Speaker to route the phone's audio through the speaker. (You can adjust the speaker volume using the Volume Button.)
  - Deactivate Speaker to use the phone's earpiece.

**Warning**: Because of higher volume levels, do not place the phone near your ear during speakerphone use.

- **Dialpad** Use the onscreen dialpad to enter additional numbers, for example, an extension or access code.
  - For example: When you call your bank's 800 number, use your dialpad to enter your account number and PIN.
- Tap to view more in-call options.
  - Add call: Tap to initiate a conference call (3-way call).
  - Flash: Tap to put the current call on hold.
  - People to display your contacts list.
  - Open contact card to display the caller's contact information.

#### End a Call

There are a couple of options for ending a phone call.

- On the call screen, tap END CALL.
- Slide the Notifications panel open, and then tap END CALL.

If the phone number of the person who called is not in your contacts list, you can choose to save the number to your contacts list after you hang up.

# PLACE CALLS FROM HISTORY/PEOPLE

You can also place calls directly from your contacts list or from the Call history screen.

#### Call From Call History

You can directly call numbers stored in your Call history.

- 1. Tap **△** > **♦**.
- 2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
- 3. Tap an entry to place a call.

Note: You cannot make calls from Call history to entries identified as No ID or Restricted.

**Tip**: Touch and hold an entry in the Call history list to open the options menu where you can select to view the contact information (if number is stored in People), edit the number before you call, send a text message, or delete the entry from the Call history list and more.

## Call From People

Call your contacts from the People application.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Swipe left to display the **PEOPLE** tab.
- 3. Tap the contact you want to call to open the contact details screen.
- 4. Tap a phone number to place a call.

For additional information, see Contacts.

## CALL HISTORY

Call history lists all recent incoming, outgoing, and missed calls. Call history makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your phone automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list.

**Note**: Call history records only calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while your phone is turned off, it will not be included in History.

## Open Call History

Access your Call history to quickly call someone back or see who you have talked to recently.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
  - Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and the contact name (if the number is in People)
- 3. Do any of the following:
  - Tap a name or number in the list to call. See Call From Call History.
  - Touch and hold a name or number in the list to display the options menu.
  - Tap a contact photo to find more ways of getting in touch with the contact.
  - Tap ▼ to display only a particular type of call such as missed calls or outgoing calls.

## Save a Number From Call History

If the phone number of a person who called is not in People, you can choose to save the number after you hang up.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
- 3. Tap + next to the new number and choose whether to create a new contact or save the number to an existing contact.

**Note**: You cannot save phone numbers already in People or from calls identified as **No ID** or **Restricted**.

## Prepend a Number From Call History

If you need to make a call from the Call history and you are outside your local area code, you can add the appropriate prefix by prepending the number.

- 1. Tap **△** > **ఄ**.
- 2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
- 3. Touch and hold the entry you want to call and tap **Edit number before calling**.
- 4. Enter the prefix and tap CALL to call the number.

## Block a Caller

When you block a phone number or a contact, all calls from the phone number or contact will be declined automatically.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
- 3. Touch and hold the contact or phone number you want to block, and then tap **Block caller > OK**.

Note: To remove a caller from your blocked list, on the CALL HISTORY tab, tap > Blocked contacts. Touch and hold a contact, and then tap Unblock contacts.

## Erase Call History

If the Call history becomes long, you can delete an entry or the entire Call history list.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Swipe right to display the CALL HISTORY tab.
- 3. Do either of the following:

- To delete a Call history entry, touch and hold the entry, and then tap **Delete from call** history.
- To erase the entire Call history list, tap > Remove call history. Tap > Select all, and then tap DELETE.

## **OPTIONAL SERVICES**

The following topics outline additional voice-related services available with your phone, including voicemail, call services, and more.

# Voicemail (Traditional)

In addition to Visual Voicemail, your phone and Virgin Mobile service always offer traditional voicemail service accessed through the Phone application.

#### **Voicemail Notification**

There are several ways your phone alerts you to a new message.

- By sounding the assigned ringer type.
- By displaying OO in the Notifications area of the status bar when a single new unheard voicemail message is received.
- By flashing the front indicator light (LED), if enabled.

**Note**: Your phone accepts messages even when it is turned off. However, your phone notifies you of new messages only when it is turned on and you are in a Virgin Mobile service area.

### Set Up Voicemail

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Virgin Mobile voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated. Always use a password to help protect against unauthorized access.

- Tap ♠ >
- 2. Touch and hold  $1^{\infty}$  to dial your voicemail number.
- 3. Follow the system prompts to:
  - Create your password.
  - Record your name announcement.
  - Record your greeting.

**Important: Voicemail Password** – Virgin Mobile strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.

### Retrieve Your Voicemail Messages

You can review your messages directly from your wireless phone (using either traditional voicemail or Visual Voicemail) or from any other touch-tone phone.

### **Use Traditional Voicemail to Access Your Messages**

- 1. Tap **△** > **ఄ**.
- 2. Touch and hold 1 oo to dial your voicemail number.
- 3. Follow the voice prompts to listen to and manage your voicemail messages.

### **Use Another Phone to Access Your Messages**

- 1. Dial your wireless phone number.
- 2. When your voicemail answers, press the pound key (#) on the phone.
- 3. Enter your password.

**Tip**: When you call voicemail from another phone, you first hear the header information (date, time, and sender information) for the message. To skip directly to the message, tap 4 GHI during the header.

**Note**: Depending on your plan, you may be charged for airtime minutes when you are accessing your voicemail from your wireless phone.

## Conference Calling

With conference calling, also known as 3-way calling, you can talk to two people at the same time. When using this feature, the normal airtime rates will be charged for each of the two calls.

- Tap ♠> ♦.
- 2. Dial a number and tap CALL.
- 3. Once you have established the connection, tap •> Add call, and dial the second number. (This puts the first caller on hold and dials the second number.)

**Tip**: You can add a call even if the first call was an incoming call.

4. When you're connected to the second party, tap **\$**.

If one of the people you called hangs up during your call, you and the remaining caller stay connected. If you initiated the call and are the first to hang up, all callers are disconnected.

To end the three-way call, tap END CALL.

## Caller ID Blocking

Caller ID identifies a caller before you answer the phone by displaying the number of the incoming call. If you do not want your number displayed when you make a call, follow these steps.

- Tap ♠ > 
   Tap ♠ >
- 2. Tap \* 6 MNO 7 PQRS
- 3. Enter a phone number.
- 4. Tap CALL.

To permanently block your number, call Virgin Mobile Customer Service.

# Call Waiting

When you're on a call, Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls by sounding two beeps. Your phone's screen informs you that another call is coming in and displays the caller's phone number (if it is available and you are in digital mode).

To respond to an incoming call while you're on a call:

■ Tap > Flash. (This puts the first caller on hold and answers the second call.)

To switch back to the first caller:

■ Tap -> Flash again.

**Note:** For those calls where you don't want to be interrupted, you can temporarily disable Call Waiting by tapping  $\star$  7 PQRS  $0^+$  before placing your call. Call Waiting is automatically reactivated once you end the call.

## Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding lets you forward all your incoming calls to another phone number – even when your phone is turned off. You can continue to make calls from your phone when you have activated Call Forwarding.

**Note**: Depending on your plan, you may be charged a higher rate for calls you have forwarded.

To activate Call Forwarding:

- Tap ♠ > 
   .
- 2. Tap \* 7 PQRS 2 ABC
- 3. Enter the area code and phone number to which you want your calls forwarded.
- 4. Tap <sup>CALL</sup> . (You will hear a tone to confirm the activation of Call Forwarding.)

You will hear a tone to confirm the activation of Call Forwarding. All calls to your wireless number will be forwarded to the designated phone number.

To deactivate Call Forwarding:

- 1. Tap **△** > **♦**.
- 2. Tap  $\star$  7 PQRS 2 ABC 0+.
- 3. Tap CALL (You will see a message and hear a tone to confirm the deactivation.)
  - You will hear a tone to confirm the deactivation.

# INTERNET CALLS

When you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, you can make and receive calls through an Internet calling account.

**Note**: Before you add an Internet calling account, make sure that you've registered with an Internet calling service that supports voice calls over Session Initiation Protocol (SIP). Internet calls to phone numbers may incur additional fees.

## Add an Internet Calling Account

You must add an Internet calling account before you can make Internet calls.

- 1. Tap △> Settings ◎ > Call.
- 2. Under Internet call settings, tap Accounts.
- 3. Tap ADD ACCOUNT.
- 4. Enter your account details.
- 5. Tap :> Save.
- 6. To set your phone to receive Internet calls on your added account, select the **Receive** incoming calls option.

## Make an Internet Call

Make an Internet call to either your contact's Internet calling account or phone number.

- Internet calling account
  - In People, tap a contact who has an Internet calling account, and then tap Internet call.
  - In Call History, tap an Internet call log.

■ Phone number. First, enable Internet calling for your outgoing calls. Tap △>:::> Settings

② > Call. Tap Use Internet calling, and then select either For all calls when data network is available, Only for Internet calls, or Ask for each call.

# CALL SETTINGS

Your phone's Call settings menu lets you configure your voicemail options and a number of accessibility options such as hearing-aid amplification and teletypewriter.

### **Call Settings Options**

See <u>Call Settings</u> for details.

# Change Ringtone Settings

You can change how your phone alerts you when you receive calls.

### Switch Between Silent, Vibrate, and Normal Modes

- To change from silent to normal mode, press the **Volume Up Button**.
- To change from vibrate to normal mode, press the Volume Up Button twice.
- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap � > Sound & notification > Sound profile.

### Lower the Ring Volume Automatically

Your phone has a guiet ring feature that automatically lowers the ring volume when you move it.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  $\bigcirc$  > **Sound & notification**.
- 2. Select the Quiet ring on pickup option.

## Make Your Phone Ring Louder in Your Pocket or Bag

To help avoid missing incoming calls when your phone is in your pocket or bag, the pocket mode feature gradually increases the ring volume and vibrates when you receive a call.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  $\bigcirc$  > **Sound & notification**.
- 2. Select the **Pocket mode** option.

# **CONTACTS**

The Contacts application lets you store and manage contacts from a variety of sources, including contacts you enter and save directly in your phone as well as contacts synchronized with your Google Account, your PC, compatible email programs (including Exchange Server), and your Facebook friends.

Contacts Cautions

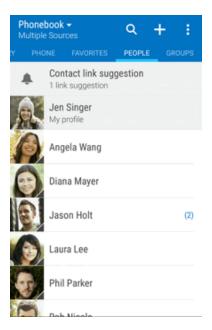
Information saved in Contacts may be lost or changed if the battery is removed for a long period or left uncharged. Accident or malfunction may also cause loss or change to information. It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of contacts and other important information. The company is not responsible for any damages from lost or changed contacts.

## Your Contacts List

The People app lists all contacts stored on your phone and from the online accounts you're logged in to.

## **Contacts Screen Layout**

- Tap **^> :::** > **People =** .
- \* The following illustration show's your Contacts app layout and describes the various features.



| Item                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| GROUPS tab              | Show contact groups.   |
| FAVORITES tab           | Show all contacts.   |
| PEOPLE tab              | Show favorite contacts.  |
| Contact name            | Tap to show contact's details. This also shows when a contact has sent you new messages. |
| Contact image           | Tap to find ways to quickly connect with the contact.                                    |
| Contact link suggestion | Tap to manage contacts from your social network and Web-based email accounts.            |
| My profile              | View your profile and edit your contact information.                                     |

| Item     | Description                       |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| • Menu   | Tap to manage your contacts list. |
| Q Search | Search contacts.                  |
| +Add new | Add a new contact.                |

**Tip**: You can also access People through the Phone app. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\triangle$  and then swipe left until you reach the **PEOPLE** tab.

Tip: To sort your contacts by their first or last name, tap \$\bigset\$ > Settings > Sort contacts by.

#### Filter Your Contacts List

When your contacts list gets long, you can choose which contact accounts to show.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  $\checkmark$  on the top bar.
- 3. Select the online accounts that contain the contacts you want to display.
- 4. Tap **5**.

## Find People

Search for contacts stored on your phone, your company directory if you have an Exchange ActiveSync account, or social networks you've signed into.

- Tap △> : :: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, you can:
  - Find people in your contacts list. Tap  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and then enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box.
  - Find people on your company directory. Tap  $\mathbf{Q}$ , enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box, and then tap **Search contacts in your Company Directory**.

**Tip**: Aside from searching for a contact by name, you can search using a contact's email address or company name. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap • **Settings** > **Search contacts by**, and then choose a search criteria.

# Set Up Your Profile

Your profile stores your personal contact information in an easy-to-access location.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ People ≥ > My profile.
- 2. Tap Edit my contact card.
- 3. Enter or edit your name and contact details.
- 4. Tap your current profile photo or icon to change it.
- Tap ✓.

Aside from your contact details, your profile also shows updates you've posted on your social networks.

### **Emergency Information**

To make it easier for emergency personnel to identify important contacts and personal information, you can select your emergency contacts and enter your emergency information right in your profile. These information will show on the emergency calling screen.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ People ≥ > My profile.
- 2. Tap **In case of emergency** under the Information section.
- 3. Tap Choose your emergency contacts.
  - You will be redirected to your Emergency contacts group.
- 4. Add contacts to your Emergency contacts group, and then tap **2**.
- 5. Tap **Information goes here**, and then enter your emergency information.
- 6. Tap **✓**.

# Add Entries to the People App

You can add new contacts to the People app or add existing ones from your social network or Exchange ActiveSync accounts.

### Add a New People Entry

Start adding your contacts on your phone. If you've set up an email account on your phone, you can sync your new contacts with that account.

- Tap △> : :: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. Tap +.
- 3. Tap the **Name** field, and then enter the contact name.

**Note**: Tap  $\square$  to separately enter the contact's given, middle, and family, and name suffix (such as Jr.).

- 4. Select the Contact type. This determines which account the contact will sync with.
- 5. Enter the contact information in the fields provided.
- 6. Tap **✓**.

When you tap the added contact on your contacts list, you'll see the contact information and your exchange of messages and calls. Depending on the information that you've added to the contact (such as an email address), you'll also be able to see the contact's social network updates, events, and photos.

#### Add an Extension Number to a Contact Number

While creating a new contact in People, you can add an extension number to their number so you can skip the voice prompts when calling.

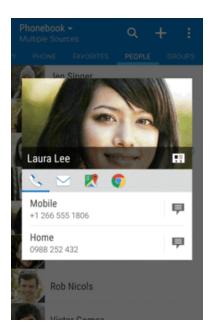
- 1. After entering the number of the main line, do one of the following:
  - Tap P(,) to insert a pause before the extension number is dialed automatically. To make the pause longer, tap P(,) again.
  - Tap W(;) to be prompted to confirm the extension number.
- 2. Enter the extension number.
- Tap ✓.

## Get in Touch with a Contact

Choose the best way to connect with your contacts.

Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>

2. Tap a contact's photo (not the name), and then choose how you want to get in touch with that contact.



**Tip**: For more ways of getting in touch with your contact, tap an icon below the contact photo.

# Manage People Entries

Make sure your contacts' information are up to date. You can edit or delete an entry in People.

### Edit a People Entry

You can add another phone number, email address, or assign a photo to a contact in People.

Note: Facebook and Twitter contacts cannot be edited.

- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Edit contact**.
- 3. Enter the new information.
- 4. Tap **✓**.

## Delete an Entry

Follow these steps to delete an entry in your contacts list.

- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Delete contact**.
- 3. Tap **OK** to confirm.

### Delete Multiple Entries

Clean up your contacts list by deleting entries that you no longer need.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap > **Delete contacts**.
- 3. Select the entries you want to delete, and then tap **DELETE**.

## Import or Copy Contacts

It's easy to import or copy contacts from your online accounts and save them directly to your phone.

## Import a Contact from an Exchange ActiveSync Account

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  $\mathbf{Q}$  and enter the contact's name or email address in the search box.
- 3. Tap Search contacts in your Company Directory.
- 4. Tap the name of the contact you want copied to your phone.
- 5. Tap + to save the contact to your phone.

## Copy Contacts from One Account to Another

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap > **Manage contacts**.
- 3. Tap **Copy contacts**, and then choose a contact type or online account to copy from.
- 4. Select a contact type or account you want to save to.

**Note**: Contacts from your social network accounts may not be copied.

## Merge Entries in People

If you have the same contacts on your phone, Google Account, and social network accounts such as Facebook and Twitter, your phone will try to combine them automatically or let you decide which contacts to combine. Combining the same contacts avoids duplicated entries in your contacts list.

### Accept Contact Link Suggestions

When your phone finds contacts that can be merged, you'll see a link notification when you open the People app.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the **Contact link suggestion** notification when available. You'll see a list of suggested contacts to merge.
- 3. Navigate to the contact you want to merge.
- 4. Tap 🕶 to merge. Otherwise, tap 🞾 to ignore the contact link suggestion.

**Note**: If you don't want to receive contact link suggestions, on the **PEOPLE** tab, tap • > **Settings**. Clear the **Suggest contact link** option.

## Manually Merge Entries

You can merge your entries manually and choose the accounts to link the contact.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) you want to link.
- 3. Tap > Link.
- 4. You can:
  - Under Suggest links, tap to link the contact to an account.
  - Under Add contact, tap one of the options to link to another contact.
- 5. Tap **DONE** to save the change.

#### Break the Link

When contact information has changed, you can choose to break the contact's link from another account

- Tap △> ::: > People ▲
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) whose link you want to break.
- 3. Tap > Link.
- 4. Under the Linked contacts section, tap beside an account to break the link.
- 5. Tap **DONE** to save the change.

## Send Contact Information

Quickly share your contact card or People entries on your phone.

- 2. Do any of the following:

- To send someone's contact information, touch and hold the name of the contact (not the icon or photo), and then tap **Send contact as vCard**.
- To send your contact information, touch and hold **My profile**, and then tap **Send my profile**.
- 3. Tap **Send contact via** and choose how you want to send the vCard.
- 4. Select the type of information you want to send.
- 5. Tap **SEND**.

### Send Multiple People Entries

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. Tap > Send contacts.
- 3. Select the contacts whose contact information you want to share.
- 4. Choose how you want to send the contact cards.
- 5. Follow screen instructions to proceed.

#### Share All Visible Contacts

You can share all entries that appear in your contacts list, regardless of the online account that your contacts sync with.

- 2. Tap > Manage contacts > Import/Export contacts > Share visible contacts.
- 3. Choose how you want to send your contacts.

## **Contact Groups**

Organize your friends, family, and colleagues into groups so you can quickly send a message or email to everyone in the group. We've also set up the Frequent group to automatically add the contacts you dial or get calls from the most.

Your phone also syncs with groups you've created in your Google Account.

### Create a Group

Create a group for your sporting buddies or family members so you can easily send them a message or email.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **GROUPS** tab. tap +.
- 3. Enter a name for the group.

- 4. Tap > Add contact to group.
- 5. Select the contacts you want to add, and then tap **SAVE**.

### Send a Message or Email to a Group

Easily send a message or email to all members of the group.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **GROUPS** tab, tap the group you want to send a message or email to.
- 3. Go to the **GROUP ACTION** tab.
- 4. Choose if you want to send a text message or email.
- 5. Follow the prompts to complete and send the group message or group mail. See <u>Send a Text</u> <u>Message (SMS)</u>, <u>Create and Send a Gmail Message</u>, or <u>Send an Email Message</u>.

### **Edit a Contact Group**

You have full control of your groups. Change the group name or add and remove group members from the People app.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch and hold the group, and then tap **Edit group**.
- 3. You can:
  - Tap the group name to change the name. You can only change the name for groups that you have created.
  - Tap \$> Add contact to group to add more members.
  - To rearrange the group members, drag at the end of the contact's name to its new position.
  - Select the check box next to any contacts you want to remove from the group.
- 4. Tap **SAVE**.

#### **Manage Your Contact Groups**

Put your favorite group at the top of the groups' list or delete groups that you don't need.

- 2. On the **GROUPS** tab, tap > **Edit groups**.
- 3. You can:

- Rearrange the contact groups. Drag = at the end of the group name to its new position.
- Select the contact groups you want to remove.
- 4. Tap SAVE.

## Back Up and Restore Your Contacts

Make sure you don't lose your contacts by backing them up to your phone's storage or microSD card (if you inserted one).

## **Back Up Contacts**

- 2. Tap > Manage contacts.
- 3. Tap Import/Export contacts > Export to phone storage or Export to SD card.
- 4. Select an account or type of contacts to export.
- 5. To help protect your data, tap **Yes**, and then set a password for this backup. Be sure to remember this password. You'll need to enter it again when importing contacts. If you don't need a password, tap **No**.
- 6. Tap **OK**.

#### **Restore Contacts**

**Note**: You can only restore contacts that were backed up using the **Export to phone storage** feature.

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. Tap > Manage contacts.
- 3. Tap Import/Export contacts > Import from phone storage or Import from SD card.
- 4. If you have more than one account set up, tap the type for the imported contacts.
- 5. If you have multiple backups available, select the backup you want to import, and then tap **OK**.
- 6. Enter the password you've set for this backup, and then tap **OK**.

## **Private Contacts**

If you don't want to show a contact's name and photo on the lock screen when you have an incoming call, add the contact to your private contacts list.

Phone App 97

#### Add a Contact to the Private Contacts List

- Tap △> ::: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. Touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Add to private contacts**.
- 3. To view your private contacts list, on the **People** tab, tap > Manage contacts > Private contacts.

## **Organize Your Private Contacts**

- Tap △> : :: > People <sup>1</sup>
- 2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap > **Manage contacts** > **Private contacts**.
- 3. To add contacts to the private contacts list, tap +, select the contacts you want to add, and then tap **SAVE**.

To remove private contacts from the list, tap \$\bigsep\$ > Remove private contact, select the contacts you want to remove, and then tap **REMOVE**.

Phone App 98

# MESSAGING AND INTERNET

With wireless service and your phone's messaging and data capabilities, you have the opportunity to share information through many different channels and accounts, including Gmail (Google), personal and corporate email, text and multimedia messaging, social networking accounts, and Hangouts.

# TEXT AND MULTIMEDIA MESSAGING

With Text Messaging (SMS), you can send and receive instant text messages between your wireless phone and another messaging-ready phone.

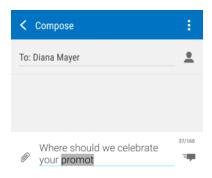
Multimedia messages, or MMS, can contain text and pictures, recorded voice, audio or video files, picture slideshows, contact cards (vCard), or appointments (vCalendar).

See your service plan for applicable charges for messaging.

# Send a Text Message (SMS)

Quickly compose and send text messages on your phone.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. Tap +.
- 3. Enter a contact name or mobile number in the "To" field.
- 4. Tap the "Add text" field and then start composing your message.



5. Tap to send, or tap to save the message as a draft.

**Note**: A counter appears above the Send icon to tell you how many characters you have entered and how many characters are left. Once you go over the 160-character limit, a new message is created but automatically joined into one when received.

**Note**: Your text message automatically becomes a multimedia message if you enter an email address as the recipient, add a message subject, attach an item, or compose a very long message.

# Send a Multimedia Message (MMS)

When you need to add a little more to a text message, you can send a multimedia message (MMS) with pictures, voice recordings, audio or video files, contact cards (vCard), or appointments (vCalendar).

- Tap ♠> ♥
- 2. Tap +.
- 3. Enter a contact name, mobile number, or email address in the "To" field.

**Tip**: If only phone numbers are showing up when you're entering a contact name, tap ♣, and then tap ♣ > **Show Email**.

- 4. To add a subject line, tap > Add subject to add a subject line to your message.
- 5. Tap the "Add text" field, and then start composing your message.
- 6. Tap and then select an attachment type.

**Tip**: Record videos with minimum resolution so you can reduce the file size of your attachments.

- 7. Select or browse for the attachment to attach.
- 8. After adding an attachment, tap **\*\*\*** to see options for replacing, viewing or removing your attachment.
- 9. Tap to send, or tap to save the message as a draft.

**Note**: Depending on the resolution of your photo or video attachments, they may be displayed as cropped thumbnails in your multimedia message.

#### Create a Slideshow

You can create an MMS message with multiple slides, each containing a photo, video, or audio, and text.

- 1. After you've added either a photo, video, or audio in the multimedia message you're composing, tap > Slide.
- 2. Choose where you want to insert the next slide.
- 3. Right after adding a slide, do one of the following:

  - Tap > Audio to add music or a voice recording to a slide.
  - Tap Add text, and then enter your caption.
  - Tap ••• to see options for replacing, viewing, or removing your attachment.

- 4. Tap > Preview. Tap once on the preview screen to see playback controls.
- 5. When finished, tap to send, or tap to save the message as a draft.

# Send a Group Message

Group messaging makes it easy to send a message to multiple contacts all at once. You can choose to send a group SMS or group MMS.

**Note**: You will be charged for each text message sent. For example, if you send a message to a group of five people, you will be charged for five messages.

**Note**: Group MMS may incur extra data fees.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. Tap +.
- 3. Tap  $\stackrel{\blacksquare}{=}$ , select multiple recipients, and then tap **DONE**. You can also swipe to the **GROUP** tab and select a contact group.
- 4. To send a group SMS, tap and select the **Send as individual** option. Clear this option to send your message as a group MMS.
  - Group SMS. Your message will be sent to the recipients as a text message and each
    message sent will be charged to your allocated text message plan. Replies of your
    recipients are sorted separately.
  - Group MMS. Similar to a group chat, sending a group MMS lets your recipients join the
    conversation you've started. Your phone also organizes message replies in a single
    conversation thread. If this is your first time to send a group MMS, you may need to enter
    your mobile phone number.
- 5. Tap the "Add text" field, and then start composing your message.
- 6. Tap to send, or tap to save the message as a draft.

#### **Group MMS FAQs**

**Question**: Why can't my recipients see or join the group MMS I sent them?

**Answer**: Check whether your recipients have enabled Group messaging on their mobile devices. Some devices or mobile operators may not support this feature.

Question: How do I receive or block group MMS?

Answer: In Message settings, tap Multimedia messages (MMS), and then turn Group Messaging on or off.

# Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message

While composing a text or multimedia message, tap  $\Sigma$  to automatically save your message as a draft. You can resume composing a draft message.

- Tap ♠ > ♥
- 2. Tap the draft message, edit the message, and then tap

**Tip**: To see all draft messages in one place, tap on the All messages screen, and then tap **Filter** > **Drafts**.

# Read and Reply to a Message

Depending on your notification settings, the phone plays a ringtone, vibrates, or displays the message briefly in the status bar when you receive a new text or multimedia message. To change the notification for new text and multimedia messages, see <a href="Text">Text and Multimedia Message Options</a>. A new message icon ( ) also appears in the status bar.

- 1. To open and read the message, you can:
  - Drag the Status Bar down to open the Notifications panel, and then tap the new message.
  - Tap △ > □, and then tap the message.
- 2. While reading the message, you can:
  - Reply with a text message. Tap the "Add text" field, enter your reply message, and then tap
  - Reply with a multimedia message. Tap the "Add text" field, enter your reply message, tap to choose an attachment for your message, and then tap .
  - Call or save a phone number contained in the message. Tap the phone number, and then choose whether to dial the number or add it to your contacts.
  - Open a link in the message. Tap the link to open it in the Web browser.
  - Send to or share an email address contained in the message. Tap the email address to send an email. You'll be asked to choose which email app to use. To share the email address, touch and hold it, tap **Share**, and then choose how you want to share it.
  - **Forward a message**. Tap the message (do not tap a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then tap **Forward**.
  - Check message details. Tap the message (do not tap a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then tap View message details.

## Reply to an Alternate Contact Phone Number

When a contact has multiple phone numbers stored on your phone, you'll see the particular phone number used below the contact's name. You can select which phone number to reply to. Keep in mind that your response will be sent to the phone number of the latest message you've received from this contact.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
- 3. Tap > Recipient phone number, and select which phone number you want to reply to.
- 4. Tap the "Add text" field, and then enter your reply message.
- 5. Tap **T**.

## Forward a Message

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
- 3. Tap the message, and then tap **Forward**.

## Receive Text Messages From Contacts Using an iPhone

If you have just migrated your contacts from an iPhone to your new HTC phone, your contacts may still be texting you through iMessage and not through SMS or MMS.

To receive text messages from your contacts who are using an iPhone, you must unregister the phone number you used on your old iPhone from your Apple support profile.

Or, if you still have your old iPhone, turn off the service in iMessage settings.

#### View and Save an Attachment from a Multimedia Message

When you receive a multimedia message, you can view and save files that are attached to it.

- If there's a media attachment such as a photo or video in a received message, tap it to view the content.
- To save the attachment, touch and hold the multimedia message, and then choose to save the type of attachment from the options menu.
- If the attachment is a contact (vCard), tap it to view the contact information, and then tap Save to add to your contacts.
- If the attachment is an appointment or event (vCalendar), tap it to choose the calendar where to save it, and then tap **Import**.

Note: If you are concerned about the size of your data downloads, you can choose to check the size and subject first before you download a multimedia message. From the All messages screen, tap • > Settings > Multimedia messages (MMS). Clear the Auto-retrieve option.

## Help Protect Your Messages

You can move private text messages to the Secure box. You will need to enter a password to read messages in the Secure box.

**Important**: The Secure box does not encrypt messages.

**Important**: Message stored on your SIM card cannot be moved to the secure box.

## Move Messages to the Secure Box

- Tap ♠ > □
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
- 3. Tap > Move to secure box.
- 4. Select the messages, and then tap MOVE.

**Note**: To move all the messages from a contact, from the All messages screen, touch and hold the contact and tap **Move to secure box**.

- To read messages in the Secure box, from the All messages screen, tap > Secure. If it is your first time to use the Secure box, set a password.
- To remove messages or contacts from the Secure box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and tap Move to general box.

#### Protect a Message from Deletion

You can lock a message so that it will not be deleted even if you delete the other messages in the conversation.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
- 3. Tap the message (not a link or a phone number) that you want to lock, and then tap **Lock** message. A lock icon is displayed at the lower right of the message.

# **Block Unwanted Messages**

Declutter your Messages screen by moving spam messages from contacts to the block box. If you have blocked a contact, that contact's messages will also be in the block box.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. Do any of the following:
  - From the All messages screen, touch and hold a contact (or phone number) and tap **Block** contact.
  - To block multiple contacts, tap > Block contacts, select the contacts, and tap BLOCK.
  - When the contact sends you messages, you will not see them in the All messages screen or receive notifications and calls.

#### Additional options:

- To read messages in the block box, tap ▼ > **Block** from the All messages screen.
- To remove messages or contacts from the block box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and tap **Unblock**.
- To completely discard future messages from blocked contacts, clear the **Save block message** option in the Messages settings.

# Delete Messages and Conversations

Tidy up your messages list by deleting old messages and conversations.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, do any of the following:
  - **Delete a message**. Open the conversation thread with a contact, tap the message, and then tap **Delete message**. To delete multiple messages within a conversation, tap **Delete messages** > **Delete by selection**, and then select the messages to delete.
  - Delete a conversation. Touch and hold a contact (or phone number), and then tap
     Delete. To delete multiple conversations, on the Messages screen, tap > Delete threads, and then select the conversations to delete.

**Tip**: In the Messages settings, tap **General** > **Delete old messages** to auto delete old messages.

# Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages

Back up important text messages to your phone's storage or to your email account.

## Back Up Text Messages

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap > Back up/Restore SMS > Back up.
- 3. Tap **OK** > **Back up SMS**.

- 4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
- 5. Enter a name for your backup file, and then tap **OK**.

## Back Up Text Messages Using Mail

**Important**: You need to set up your email account in Mail.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap > Back up/Restore SMS > Back up.
- 3. Tap **OK** > **Back up SMS via mail**.
- 4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
- 5. Select the email app to use. The email app compose screen opens with the backup file attached.
- 6. Enter your email address.
- 7. Compose your email message, and tap =

**Note**: To restore your text messages on your phone, open the email message with the backup file attachment from the Mail application. Tap the attachment to open the Restore SMS screen and then tap the backup file to restore your text messages.

## Restore Text Messages

You can only restore text messages that were exported using the Back up SMS feature.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap > Back up/Restore SMS > Restore.
- 3. Select a restore setting, and tap **NEXT**.
- 4. Tap the backup file to import.
- 5. Enter the password, and tap **OK**.

# Text and Multimedia Message Options

You can set how your phone notifies you when you receive a new text or multimedia message, or set other messaging options.

- 1. Tap **△** > □.
- 2. From the All messages screen, tap \$ > Settings. You can set the following options:

## Notifications: Received messages

- Received notification: Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
- **Play notification sound**: If you want the phone to ring when a new message arrives, select this option.
- Notification sound: Select a ringtone that is specific to new text and multimedia messages. Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.
- **Vibrate**: Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
- **Heads-up notification**: Select to display the message preview without leaving the current app you're in.

## Notifications: Sent messages

- Sent notification: Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is sent successfully.
- **Failure notification**: Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is not sent successfully.
- Play notification sound: If you want the phone to ring when a sent or failure notification is received, select this option.
- Notification sound: Select a ringtone that is specific to sent or failure notifications.
   Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.
- Vibrate: Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message is sent.
- Display message on screen: Set your phone to show pop-up notifications (not just in the status bar) when your messages are sent successfully or not. You can also select None to disable this option.

#### Text Messages (SMS) Settings

- **Priority setting**: Set the priority for outgoing text messages.
- **SMS characters**: Select this option to correctly display special accented characters in SMS messages.

#### Multimedia Messages (MMS) Settings: MMS settings

 Auto-retrieve: Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely. When selected, the multimedia message header plus the message body and attachments will automatically download to your phone. If you clear this check box, only the multimedia message header will be retrieved and shown in the All messages screen.

- Roaming auto-retrieve: Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely while roaming. Data roaming charges will apply.
- Priority setting: Set the priority for outgoing MMS messages.
- Maximum message size: Set the maximum file size of a multimedia message. The
  multimedia message will not be sent out if it exceeds the file size set here.
- Attachment storage: Select the storage where you want to save multimedia message attachments. This is disabled for phones with no storage card.
- Connection settings: View various connection settings such as the connection name and server address.

#### Multimedia Messages (MMS) Settings: Group Messages

 Group Messages: Select to turn group MMS on or off. When you enable this, you will need to enter your phone number for group MMS.

#### General: Recipient list settings

- Show sent message history: Include the sent message history when searching for a message recipient.
- Show email address: Include email addresses when searching for a message recipient.

#### • General: Message preview

 Message preview: Set the number of lines of text to appear in the conversation on the All messages screen.

#### General: Storage settings

- Delete old messages: Automatically delete older messages, except for locked messages, when the set limits are reached.
- Text message limit: Choose the maximum number of text messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)
- Multimedia message limit: Choose the maximum number of MMS messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)

#### General: Settings

- Password: Set a password for the Secure box.
- Save block message: Select to save blocked messages to the block box.

#### General: Signature

- **Use signature**: Select this option to add a signature to all your outgoing text and multimedia messages.
- **Signature**: Tap to compose your own signature.

#### • General: Personalize

 Lets you customize the message thread's background image and color and texture of message bubbles.

#### · General: Font size

• Set the font size for message threads.

#### • General: Callback number

• Enable or change the callback number for SMS messages.

## **GMAIL**

Use Google's Gmail service and your Google Account to send, receive, and manage your Gmail messages. Before using Gmail, you must register a Google (Gmail) Account on your phone. See Google Account for details.

#### Gmail Cautions

Gmail is handled as email from a PC. Restricting email from PCs on your phone prevents your phone from receiving Gmail.

## Create and Send a Gmail Message

Create and send an email message from your Gmail account.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Gmail M.
- 2. From the inbox of the Gmail account you want to use, tap ...
- 3. Fill in one or more recipients.

**Note**: If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, tap **∨** next to the "To" field.

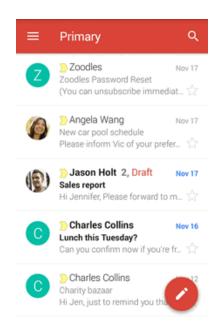
- 4. Enter the email subject, and then compose your email.
- 5. If you want to attach a photo, video, or file, tap > Attach file, select the source of the attachment, and then select the file to attach.
- 6. Tap to send.

Note: While composing the message, tap > Save draft to save it as a draft. To discard the message, tap > Discard.

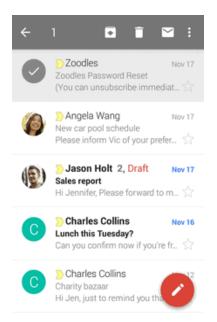
# Check Received Gmail Messages

Your phone allows you to access, read, and reply to all your Gmail messages. All your received emails are delivered to your Inbox.

# Tap ♠> ::: > Gmail M.



- 2. Do any of the following from your Inbox.
  - Tap an email message (not the sender image or letter tile) to read, forward, or reply to the message.
  - Tap to change the inbox category (for example, **Social**), switch to your other Gmail account, or to display drafts, sent messages, or other email labels and categories.
  - Tap the sender image or letter tile to select one or more messages or conversations. You
    can then tap the onscreen buttons at the top bar to archive, delete, or mark the selected
    messages or conversations.



# Manage Gmail Messages

Your phone gives you control over how you manage your Gmail messages with labels, thread management, search capabilities, adding multiple Google Accounts, and more.

## Reply To or Forward an Email Message

Use your Gmail Account to reply to or forward email messages.

- Tap △> ::: > Gmail M.
- 2. Tap the email message or conversation.
- 3. To reply to the sender, tap . Or, tap and choose whether to **Reply all** or **Forward**.
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - If you are replying to the sender or you selected Reply all, enter your reply message.
  - If you selected **Forward**, specify the message recipients.

**Note**: Tap **RESPOND INLINE** if you want to interleave your new message with the received email. However, this removes any attachments or formatting in the original email message.

5. Tap to send.

#### Add a Gmail Account

If you have two or more Gmail accounts, you can add them on your phone and easily switch between accounts in Gmail.

To add another Gmail account, see Create a Google Account.

# Get Help with Gmail

Find out more about how to use Gmail.

■ In the Gmail inbox, tap => Help & feedback.

# **EMAIL**

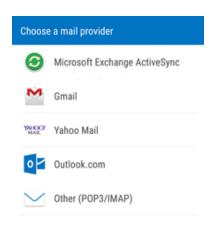
Use the Mail application to send and receive email from your webmail or other accounts, using POP3 or IMAP, or access your Exchange ActiveSync account for your corporate email needs.

## Add an Email Account

You can add several types of personal email accounts, such as from a Web-based email service or email provider.

**Tip**: You can also set up an email account from the Accounts & sync settings. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap > **Accounts & sync** > +.

- 1. Tap **△**> **...**> **Mail △**.
- 2. Select an email account type from the list of email providers. Otherwise, if you've already added an email account during the setup process, tap \$> Add account.



**Important**: If the account type you want to set up is not in the phone database, you will be asked to enter more details. You should get all pertinent information for the email account, such as incoming and outgoing server settings, before you proceed.

- 3. Enter the email address and password for your email account, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 4. Select the email data you'd like to sync with your phone, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 5. Enter a name for your email account, and then tap **FINISH SETUP**.

# Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account

If you synchronize your phone with your Exchange ActiveSync account, you can read, manage, and send email in the same easy way as with a POP3/IMAP account. However, you can also access some powerful Exchange features. Ask your network administrator or email service provider for additional email settings that you may need.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Mail ∠.
- 2. Select Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync. Otherwise, if you've already added an email account during the setup process, tap \$\bigselow\$ > Add account > Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.
- 3. Tap **MANUAL SETUP** and enter the required information:
  - Email address: Enter your email address.
  - **Server address**: Enter your system's Exchange server remote email address. Obtain this information from your company network administrator.
  - **Domain**: Enter your network domain.
  - **Username**: Enter your username.
  - Password: Enter your network access password (case-sensitive).
  - Encrypted SSL connection: Tap to place a checkmark in the box, if your system requires SSL encryption.
  - Client certificate: Tap to select client certification, if required.
- 4. Follow the onscreen prompts to configure options for the account.
- 5. Enter an account name and a display name and tap **DONE** to complete setup.
  - Your corporate email account is set up and you will begin receiving email for the account.

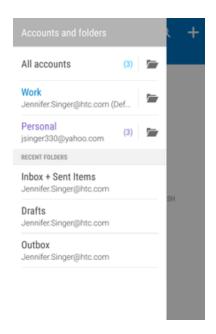
## Check Your Mail Inbox

When you open the Mail application, it displays the inbox of one of your email accounts that you've set up on your phone.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Mail ∠.
- \* The inbox of one of your email accounts appears.
- 2. Do any of the following:

- Tap an email message to read.
- To switch between email folders or accounts or view email messages from all your accounts,





- To display email messages in another mail folder, tap Folder, and then tap the folder you want to view.
- To refresh the inbox, pull down the screen.
- To change an email account's settings, select the account and then tap > **Settings**.

# Organize Your Inbox

Organize your email messages into tabs and quickly find the messages you want.

- 1. Tap **△**> **:::** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
- 3. From the inbox, tap ♦ > Edit tabs.
- 4. Select the tabs you want to add to the inbox.
- 5. To arrange the tabs, drag \_\_\_\_, and then move the tab to its new location.
- 6. Tap DONE.
- 7. Swipe to the added tab to check your email messages.

# Send an Email Message

Send an email message to your contacts using an email account in Mail.

- 1. Tap **△**> **:::** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
- 3. Tap +.
- 4. Fill in one or more recipients.

**Tip**: If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, tap • > **Show Cc/Bcc**.

- 5. Enter the subject, and then compose your message.
- 6. Do any of the following:
  - Add an attachment. Tap and then choose what you want to attach.
  - Set the priority for an important message. Tap > Set priority.
- 7. Tap **T** to send. Or to send it later, tap **Save**.

**Note**: If there's no Wi-Fi or data connection available or Airplane mode is on when you send your email, the email is saved to the Outbox folder. Once there's Wi-Fi or data connection available, the saved email will be sent automatically next time your phone syncs.

## Resume a Draft Email Message

- Tap ♠> ::: > Mail
- 2. In an email account inbox, tap > Folder > Drafts.
- 3. Tap the message.
- 4. When you finish editing the message, tap =

# Read and Reply to an Email Message

Read email messages and reply to them promptly in the Mail app.

- 1. Tap **△**> **∷** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
- 3. In the email account inbox, tap the email you want to read.

**Note**: If you want to read a particular message inside an email conversation, tap  $\bigcirc$  to expand the conversation, and then tap the email message.

4. Tap REPLY or REPLY ALL.

**Tip**: Tap • for more actions for the email.

## Quickly Reply to an Email Message

You can quickly respond to a new email message from the Home screen or lock screen.

- 1. When you receive a new email message notification, slide the Notifications panel down.
- 2. On the email preview, tap **REPLY ALL** or **FORWARD**.

**Note**: If you have several notifications and you don't see the email options, expand the email preview by sliding two fingers apart on the notification.

3. Compose your reply message and tap = ...

# Save an Image in an Email Message

While viewing an email message, touch and hold an embedded image, and then tap **Save image**.

You'll find the saved image in the **Downloads** folder.

You can also copy the image to the clipboard or set it as your wallpaper.

Note: If the image does not show, tap Display images.

# Manage Email Messages

The Mail app provides easy ways to sort, move, or delete your email messages.

## Sort Email Messages

Customize how you sort your email messages.

■ From an email account inbox, tap Sort, and select from the sorting options.

## Move Email Messages to Another Folder

- 1. Tap **△**> **:::** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
- 3. Select the email messages you want to move.

**Tip**: To select all, select one email message first, and then tap  $\frac{1}{2}$  > **Select all**.

4. Tap **MOVE TO** and then select a folder.

## Delete Email Messages

- 1. Tap **△**> **...** > **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
- 3. Select the email messages you want to delete.

**Tip**: To select all, select one email message first, and then tap • > **Select all**.

4. Tap **DELETE > OK**.

# Search Email Messages

If you have a long list of email messages in your inbox, you can easily search for that important email.

- 1. Tap **△**> **:::** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Tap **Q**.
- 3. If you want to refine or filter your search, tap , check the search options, and then tap **OK**. For example, you can focus the search on a part of an email or filter email messages that have attachments or tagged as high priority.
- 4. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for.
- 5. Tap a result to open the email message.

#### Search Emails From a Contact

Search emails from a contact when you remember the sender, but can't find that particular message.

- 1. Tap **△**> **...** > **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to the email account you want to use.
- 3. Touch and hold an email message from a contact.
- 4. Tap **Show all mail from sender**. A list of email messages from that contact appears.

# Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email

Enjoy the powerful email features of Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync right on your phone. Flag important email messages, set your out of the office reply, or send invites to your next team meeting while you're on the go.

## Flag Email Messages

- 1. Tap **△**> **...**> **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
- 3. While viewing your Exchange ActiveSync email inbox, tap the flag icon that appears on the right of an email message or conversation. The icon turns red after you flagged the email or conversation.

**Tip**: To flag an email message inside a conversation, tap  $\bigcirc$  to expand the conversation, and then tap the flag icon of the email message.

#### **Set Your Out of Office Status**

You can set your Out of Office status and auto-reply message right from your phone.

- 1. Tap **△**> **...** > **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
- 3. Tap > Out of the office.
- 4. Tap your current office status, and then select **Out of the office**.
- 5. Set the dates and times for the period when you will be out of the office.
- 6. Enter the auto-reply message.
- 7. If you want a different auto-reply message for recipients outside your organization, select the **Send replies to external senders** option, and then enter the auto-reply message in the box that appears.
- 8. Tap **SAVE**.

## Send a Meeting Request

- 1. Tap **△**> **∷** > **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
- 3. Tap > New meeting invitation.
- 4. Enter the meeting details.
- 5. Tap **SAVE**. Or tap **SEND** if you've invited people to the meeting.

# Use Smart Sync

Smart Sync automatically extends the sync time the longer the Mail app is inactive. Set your email account to Smart Sync when you don't need to check new email messages frequently. Smart Sync helps save battery power.

- 1. Tap **△**> **:::**> **Mail △**.
- 2. Switch to the email account where you want to use Smart Sync.
- 3. Tap > Settings > Sync, Send & Receive.
- 4. Tap **Peak time sync** and select **Smart Sync**.
- 5. Tap Off-peak sync and select Smart Sync.
- 6. Tap **5**.

Smart Sync then extends the email synchronization time after each auto sync time passes and you don't open the Mail app. To sync your email at any time, open the Mail app and refresh your inbox.

If you want to receive email messages as they arrive, select another peak and off-peak sync schedule in the email account's **Sync**, **Send & Receive** settings.

## Delete an Email Account

Delete an email account from your phone if you want to discontinue using that account.

- 1. Tap **△**> **...**> **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to the email account that you want to delete.
- 3. Tap > Settings > Delete account.
- 4. Tap **OK** to confirm.

# Change the Email Account Settings

Change your email account settings such as the email account name and password, signature, sync schedule, and more.

- 1. Tap **△**> **...** > **Mail ...**
- 2. Switch to the email account you want to change.
- 3. Tap > Settings, and choose from these options:
  - **Account settings**: Change the email account settings such as the name, email address, password, and description.
  - General settings
    - Mail body font size: Set the font size when reading email messages.
    - Use signature: Select to append a signature to your outgoing email messages.
    - **Signature**: Set the signature for outgoing email messages.

- Set as default account: Select to use the current email account as the default account to send email messages.
- Attachment cache: Select where to cache email attachments.
- Ask before deleting: Select to display a confirmation box when deleting email messages.
- Portrait body preview: Set the number of lines of text to display for email messages in the inbox.
- Show threaded view: Select to group messages and related replies into threads.
- Clear search history. Clears your email search history.

#### Sync, Send & Receive

- **Peak time sync**: Set the synchronization schedule during your set peak time.
- Peak time: Set the time when you receive the most number of email messages.
- o **Off-peak sync**: Set the synchronization schedule during your set off-peak time.
- Download past mail or Download options (POP email): Set how many days or number of emails to download past email messages.
- **Refresh on open**: Select to automatically download email messages when you open an email folder.
- **Folder to sync**: Select the folder to synchronize whenever you launch Mail.
- Sync deleted items from server (POP email only): Select to remove messages from your phone when they're deleted from the mail server.
- Mail size limit: Set the maximum email file size for incoming messages.
- Message format (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set email messages to display in HTML or plain text format.
- Include file attachment (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set the size of email attachments that will be automatically downloaded with email messages.
- Reply with original text: Select to include the original email text when replying.
- Forward with attachment (POP email only): Select to include email attachments when you forward the email.
- **Delete mail on server** (POP email only): Select to remove mail from the server when you delete it on your phone.
- Always bcc me: Select to always send yourself a copy of all email messages that you send.

#### Notification settings

- **Email notifications**: Select to turn on email notifications on your phone.
- **Play notification sound**: Set the phone to play a sound when a new email message arrives.
- **Notification sound**: Select the sound to play when a new email message arrives.
- Vibrate: Set the phone to vibrate when a new email message arrives.
- Delete account: Tap to delete the email account.
- 4. Tap **5** to save your changes.

# DATA SERVICES GENERAL INFORMATION (4G LTE AND 3G NETWORKS)

The following topics will help you learn the basics of using your data services, including launching a data connection and navigating the Web with your phone.

**Important**: Certain data services requests may require additional time to process. While your phone is loading the requested service, the touchscreen may appear unresponsive when in fact they are functioning properly. Allow the phone some time to process your data usage request.

## 4G LTE

The 4G LTE network provides your phone with wireless Internet access over greater distances than Wi-Fi and delivers faster data transfer rates. To connect your phone to the 4G LTE network, you must be in an area covered by the 4G LTE network.

For more information about the availability of 4G LTE in your location, visit virginmobileusa.com.

**Note**: The availability and range of the network depends on a number of factors including your distance to the base station, and infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

#### Set Your Network Options

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **Mobile data** > **Network mode**.
- 3. Select LTE /CDMA or Automatic. The phone will scan for the best available network and will automatically connect to it.

**Note**: The network is self-discoverable, which means no additional steps are required for your phone to connect to it.

## Data Connection Status and Indicators

Your phone displays the current status of your data connection through indicators at the top of the screen. The following symbols are used:

| Icon | Status   |
|------|--|
|      | Network (full signal): The icon indicates the strength of the signal.  |
| LTE  | 4G LTE (data service): Your phone is connected to the 4G LTE network.  |
| 3G   | <b>3G</b> (data service): Your phone is connected to the 3G network. When the icon animates, your phone is transferring or receiving data. |

## Turn the Data Connection On or Off

Turn your data connection off to optimize the phone's battery life and your data usage.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **MOBILE DATA** tile to turn data connection on or off.

**Note**: If you don't have the data connection turned on and you're also not connected to a Wi-Fi network, you won't receive automatic updates to your email, social network accounts, and other synced information.

## Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off

To help conserve power and data usage, you can set a time period when the data connection will automatically turn off during low peak times. This takes effect after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage).

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Tap Power > Sleep mode.
- 3. To manually change the settings, clear **Learn sleep time automatically** if it's selected.
- 4. Choose the start and end time when data connection is disabled.
- 5. Tap the **Sleep mode** ON/OFF switch to turn it on.

**Note**: The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.

# Manage Your Data Usage

If you're on a limited data allowance, it's important to keep track of the activities and apps that usually send and receive data, such as browsing the Web, syncing online accounts, and sending email or sharing status updates.

Here are some other examples:

- Streaming Web videos and music
- Tuning in to Internet radio
- Playing online games
- Downloading apps, maps, and files

- Refreshing apps to update info and feeds
- Uploading and backing up your files to your online storage account
- Using your phone as a Mobile Hotspot

**Tip**: To help you save on data usage, connect to a Wi-Fi network whenever possible and set your online accounts and emails to sync less frequently.

## Keep Track of Your Data Usage

**Note**: Data usage measured by your phone may differ from, and be less than, your actual data usage.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More > Data usage.
- 3. On the **MOBILE** tab, select **Limit mobile data usage** to automatically disable your data connection when you reach the set limit. Then, drag the upper LIMIT line to set your monthly data limit.
- 4. Select **Alert me about data usage**, and then drag the lower ALERT line to set an alert before you reach your monthly data limit.
- 5. Tap **Reset data usage**, and then set the day of the month when your usage cycle resets. This date is usually the start of your monthly billing cycle.
- 6. Drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.

**Note**: If you're connecting your phone to another portable Wi-Fi hotspot, tap **2** > **Mobile hotspots** to restrict background data from downloading that may incur extra data connection.

## View the Data Usage of Apps

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More > Data usage.
- 3. On the **MOBILE** tab, drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.
- 4. Scroll down the screen to see a list of apps and their data usage info.
- 5. Tap an app to see more details.

# CHROME BROWSER

Your phone comes with the Chrome mobile Web browser. If you are signed in with a Google Account, the Chrome browser will import all your bookmarks and other Web preferences for use on your phone.

#### Go to a Website

- Tap ♠ > ♠.
- 2. Tap the address bar at the top and enter search words (for a Google search) or a Web address (URL). If the address bar does not show, scroll down the screen.
- 3. On the webpage, you can:
  - Tap a link to open it, or touch and hold a link to see more options.
  - Tap an email address to send a message to the email address, save it to People, and more.
  - Touch and hold an image to save, copy, or set it as your wallpaper.
  - While browsing a webpage, tap and select the **Request desktop site** to display the full desktop version of the webpage.
- 4. To return to the previous webpage you've viewed, tap  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\triangleright}$   $\leftarrow$  . To go forward, tap  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\triangleright}$   $\rightarrow$  .

## Find Text In a Web Page

- Tap ♠ > ♥
- 2. Navigate to a webpage and tap > Find in page.
- 3. Enter the search item. As you enter characters, matching characters will be highlighted.
- 4. Tap the up or down arrow to go to the previous or next matching item.

## Use Browser Tabs

Open multiple browser tabs to make it easier for you to switch from one website to another.

- Tap ♠ > ♥
- 2. While viewing a Web page, tap > New tab. Repeat the same to open new browser tabs.
- 3. To switch among browser tabs, tap and then tap the webpage you want to view.
- 4. To close a browser tab, tap and then swipe up the tab you want to close.

**Tip**: Opened browser tabs reside in the Recent apps screen. If you want to see the browser tabs inside Chrome, you can disable this feature. On the browser screen, tap • > Settings > Merge tabs and apps, tap the switch, and then tap **OK**.

## Add Bookmarks

Add your favorite webpages as bookmarks so you can access them quickly.

- Tap ♠ > ♠.
- 2. While viewing a Web page, tap and then tap \$\frac{1}{2}\$.
- 3. Edit the bookmark name or save the bookmark in a folder.
- 4. Tap Save.
- 5. To view and open a bookmark, tap > Bookmarks. Navigate to the bookmark you want to open, and then tap it.

Note: You can also add a bookmark directly to the Home screen. While viewing a webpage, tap \$\bigset\$ > Add to homescreen.

# **Browsing History**

Your phone keeps a record of webpages you've visited.

**Note**: If you don't want your phone to keep your browsing history, browse using an incognito tab. See Private Browsing for details.

## Check your Browsing History

- Tap ♠ > ♥
- 2. Tap :> **History**.
- 3. Navigate to the webpage that you want to view, and then tap it.

## **Clear Your Browsing History**

- Tap ♠ > ♥
- 2. Tap :> **History**.
- 3. Tap CLEAR BROWSING DATA.
- 4. Select the browsing data you want to delete, and then tap **CLEAR**.

**Tip**: If you want to select which webpage entry to delete, while on the History screen, tap  $\times$  next to the entry you want to delete.

# Private Browsing

You can use incognito tabs to browse the Web with more privacy. Browser cookies are not shared and are deleted when you close all incognito tabs. Pages you view in incognito also won't appear in your browser history except for files you download.

- Tap ♠ > ♠.
- 2. Tap > New incognito tab.
- 3. Tap the address bar at the top and enter search words (for a Google search) or a Web address (URL) as you would normally do on a new browser tab.

**Tip**: To quickly close all incognito tabs, swipe down the Notifications panel and then tap the Chrome notification.

# Set Browser Options

Customize the Web browser to suit your browsing style. Set display, privacy, and security options when using the browser.

- Tap ♠ > ♠.
- 2. Tap > Settings.
- 3. Change the settings.

## Chrome Support

Find on-phone help with Chrome.

- Tap ♠ > ♠.
- 2. Tap > Help & Feedback.
  - \* A Web page will open displaying Google help for Chrome.

Tip: For more information, from your computer, visit google.com.

# SEARCH FOR INFORMATION

Start your search by entering a keyword or by using Google Voice Search  $^{\mathsf{TM}}$  .

**Note**: Some apps, such as People or Mail, have their own search function, which you can use to search only within those apps.

## Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone

You can search for information on your phone and on the Web.

Tap △> : :: > Google 8.

**Tip**: If you've already set up a Google Account on your phone, you will be given the option to sign in to Google Now ™. To sign in to Google Now at a later time, tap **SKIP**.

2. In the search box, enter what you want to search for. As you type, matching items on your phone and suggestions from Google Web search are shown.

- To search for the information exclusively on your phone, swipe your finger up the screen, and then tap **Search Phone**.
- 3. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, tap the item to open it in its compatible app.

**Tip**: You can also filter Web search results by tapping any of the categories on the filter bar at the bottom of the screen.

## Search the Web with Your Voice

Use Google Voice Search to find information on the Web just by speaking to your phone.

Note: Searching with your voice is not supported on all languages.

- Tap △> ::: > Google 8.
- 2. Tap  $\P$  and then say what you want to search for. After speaking, matching items from Google Web search are shown.
- 3. If what you're searching for is in the list, tap the item to open it in its compatible app. Otherwise, tap 

  ♣ to search again.

## Set Search Options

You can select or customize your search preferences.

- Tap □ > Section > Google Settings
- 2. Tap **Search & Now** and tap the options you want to change.

**Tip**: To get help or provide feedback, tap **3** or tap **5** > **Help & feedback** from the Google Settings screen.

# Get Instant Information with Google Now

Google Now delivers quick and up-to-date information that matters to you — all without the search.

Depending on your location, time of day, and previous Google searches, Google Now displays information cards that include:

- The day's weather and the weather forecast for upcoming days.
- The traffic conditions on your way to work or your commute back home.
- The directions and travel time to your next appointment.
- The next train or bus arriving at your platform or bus stop.
- Your favorite team's score and stats while you enjoy the game.

## Set Up Google Now

Before setting up Google Now, make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account, you've turned on location services, and have an Internet connection. For more information on Location services, see Location Settings.

- Tap △> : :: > Google 8
- 2. Tap **GET STARTED**.
- 3. Read the information screen, and then tap **YES**, **I'M IN**. Google Now information cards will start to appear on the Google search screen.
- 4. To see all available information cards, swipe up the screen and tap **More**.
- 5. To keep a card from appearing on the Google search screen, tap ••• on the card you want to hide, and then tap **NO**.

Depending on the information that you've allowed to share, more information cards will appear on the Google search screen as you use your phone to search the Web, create appointments, and more.

## **Change Card Settings**

You can easily customize the settings of Google Now cards to suit your information needs. For example, you can change the weather units in the Weather card or your transportation mode in the Traffic card.

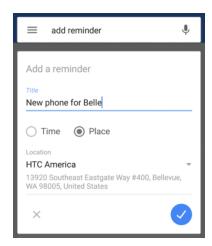
- Tap △> ::: > Google 8.
- 2. Do any of the following:
  - To change a card setting, such as the weather unit on the Weather card, touch ••• above the card, touch the left or right arrow, and change the settings you want.
  - To change specific card information such as your work address and sports teams or stocks you follow, touch on the search bar, and then touch **Customize**. Choose the information you want to change

#### Set Reminders in Google Now

Setting reminders in Google Now is an easy way to keep tab of things to do. You can set time or location-based reminders. When the reminder time is up or when you've arrived at the specified location, Google Now displays the Reminder card in the Google Search screen and sounds a notification to alert you.

- Tap △> ::: > Google 8.
- 2. Tap => **Reminders** > 0.
- 3. Enter the reminder title, such as the task you want to be reminded of.
- 4. Select **Time** to set a time-based reminder or **Place** to set a location-based reminder.

5. Set the reminder time or location details.



6. Tap **⊘**.

When the reminder time is due or when you've arrived at the location, the Reminder card will appear in the Google search screen. You can then dismiss or snooze the reminder.

**Tip**: To see a list of all your reminders, tap == > **Reminders**.

## Turn Off Google Now

- Tap △> : :: > Google 8.
- 2. Tap => Settings > Now cards.
- 3. Tap the switch next to **Show cards**, and then tap **TURN OFF**.

# CAMERA AND VIDEO

You can use the camera or video camera to take and share pictures and videos. Take great photos and videos with the camera, and make them more memorable by applying a variety of effects and scenes

# TAKE PICTURES AND RECORD VIDEOS

The following topics teach you how to take pictures and record videos with your phone's camera.

#### Capturing Pictures/Videos

- File Format for Pictures: File format for pictures is JPEG.
- File Format for Videos: File format for videos is MPEG4.

#### Camera Cautions

**If Lens Becomes Dirty**: Fingerprints/smudges on lens prevent capturing of clear still images/videos. Wipe lens with a soft cloth beforehand.

**Avoid Exposure to Direct Sunlight**: Be careful not to expose lens to direct sunlight for long periods. May discolor color filter and affect color of images.

## Get Started with the Camera

Capture photos quickly with your phone. Just directly launch the camera from the lock screen, even if your phone is password protected.

- 1. When your display is off, press the **Power/Lock Button**.
- 2. Drag up so you can start taking photos and videos.



**Tip**: From the Home screen, you can also tap to launch the camera.

3. Tap to see all controls on the Viewfinder screen. You can use the controls to switch capture modes, add filters, set the flash, and more.

Camera and Video 130



- Camera scenes: Choose a scene to use for taking photos.
- Video mode: Choose a scene to use for recording videos.
- AUTO ISO level: Choose an ISO level or set it back to Auto. Higher ISO works best in low light conditions
- Exposure setting: Choose an exposure setting. Higher exposure settings capture more light for your photos or videos.
- **AWB White balance setting**: Choose a white balance setting that matches your current lighting environment.
- Settings: Choose from more basic and advanced camera settings.

#### Choose a Capture Mode

Switch to a capture mode to use for taking photos or videos.

- On the Viewfinder screen, tap **88**, and then tap a capture mode.
- Swipe across the Viewfinder screen to switch between capture modes.
  - In landscape view, swipe from the top or bottom edge of the screen.
  - In portrait view, swipe from the left or right edge of the screen.

## Zooming

- Before taking a photo or video, slide two fingers apart to zoom in or together to zoom out.
- When you're recording video, you can freely zoom in or out while recording.

#### Choose a Flash Mode

• On the Viewfinder screen, tap the flash icon to choose a flash mode.

When using Flash on or Auto flash mode, the camera intelligently sets the best flash brightness for your photo.

Camera and Video 131

## Use the Volume Button for Taking Photos and Videos

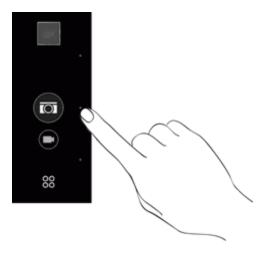
If you feel much comfortable with using push-buttons when taking photos and videos, you can set your phone to use the **Volume Button** as the Camera app's shutter release or zoom controls.

- 1. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 2. Tap **O** > **General settings** > **Volume button options**.
- 3. Choose how you want to use the **Volume Button** when you're in the Camera app.

## Close the Camera App

To give you a full view of the Viewfinder screen, your phone replaces  $\hat{\Omega}$ ,  $\hat{\Sigma}$ , and  $\hat{\square}$  with small dots.

■ Tap a dot to show these buttons again, and then tap or to close the Camera app and return to the Home screen or the previous screen.



## Take a Picture

Whether it's moving or not, clearly capture any moment with your phone's camera.

**Note**: If you have an SD card installed, you can choose to save pictures and videos to the SD card. If no card is installed, pictures and videos are saved to your phone's memory.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **60** > **Camera**.
- 3. Point the camera at what you want to capture. The camera adjusts the focus automatically as you move it.
- 4. When you're ready to take the shot, tap .

Camera and Video 132

**Tip**: You can also tap anywhere on the screen to take a photo if you selected **Touch to capture** in **?** > **©** > **Camera options**.

## Capture Better Photos

Here are some tips on how to improve the quality of your photos on your phone.

#### Improve Focus and Sharpness

- Your phone's camera has autofocus, which works best on a subject that is not moving too much. To change the focus, on the Viewfinder, tap the one you want to focus on.
- If the subject is moving, on the Viewfinder, touch and hold the subject to lock the focus.
- You can manually adjust the sharpness of a photo by editing in the Gallery app. You can also set the sharpness before taking a photo in the Camera settings. Generally, it is better to sharpen a blurry image rather than to reduce the sharpness in an image.

#### Take Well-lit Photos

- Your phone automatically adjusts the focus and exposure. If the image appears underexposed or appears dark on the Viewfinder screen, tap a part of the image that is in shadow. Conversely, tap a well-lit object in the image if the image seems to be overexposed. Focus on an object with a neutral tone for a balanced exposure. Keep in mind that tapping on another object may shift the focus from your subject.
- If you are using the default settings and the photo still appears too dark, switch to Night scene, but use a tripod or place your phone on a level surface.
- If there are parts of the image that are in shadows and others are in highlights, use HDR mode to capture three shots of different exposures and combine them into one shot. Keep your phone steady or place it on a level surface when using HDR.
- When taking a panorama shot, consider the whole scene and focus on an object that has a neutral tone to help keep the exposure balanced in the composite image.
- If your subject is lit from the back, use **Backlight** scene to highlight the foreground and keep some details of the background.

#### Other Tips

- In Camera settings, tap **Grid** to help frame the subject better or improve the composition.
- If taking photos under fluorescent or incandescent bulbs and the subject appears to be off-color, tap 
   AWB and then choose a white balance setting. Check the image on the Viewfinder and select the option that displays the closest color to the natural color of the subject.
- In Camera settings, you can tap Image adjustments and adjust the exposure, contrast, and

others before taking the photo.

 After capturing the photo, you can continue to edit the contrast, brightness, and others in the Gallery app.

## Record a Video

Capture high-definition video clips that you can later share or create into movies.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **66** > **Camera**.
- 3. When you're ready to start recording, tap .
- 4. Change focus to a different subject or area by just tapping it on the Viewfinder screen.
- 5. Tap the flash icon to turn the flash on or off.
- 6. Tap  $\Pi$  to pause the recording, and then tap  $\blacksquare$  to resume.
- 7. Tap to stop recording.

#### Set the Video Resolution

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. On the Viewfinder screen, tap 3.
- 3. Tap **②** > **Video Quality**, and then choose a video resolution.

# Take a Photo While Recording a Video - VideoPic®

Use the Normal video scene when you want to take a photo while recording a video.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options. Make sure you see the which means the **Normal** video scene is selected.
- 3. Tap to start recording.
- 4. While recording, tap to capture a still shot.
- 5. Tap to stop recording.

# Selfies and People Shots

Take high-quality selfies with the front camera even in low-light conditions. Use your phone's cameras to take vivid group photos all the time.

### Tips for Taking Selfies and People Shots

Look best in your shot. Here are some camera options you can adjust or select before taking selfies and people shots.

#### **Portrait Scene**

Using the Portrait scene helps a little in smoothing the skin in your selfies and people shots.

- Tap ♠> ●.
- 2. Tap **80** > **Camera** or **Selfie**.
- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Tap 101.
- 5. Tap 2 to select the Portrait scene.

### **Angle of Selfies**

You can set the angle of your shots to look exactly the same as how you see yourself on the Viewfinder screen.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap 88 > Camera or Selfie.
- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Tap **②** > Camera options.
- 5. Select the **Save mirror image** option.

#### Using Voice Selfie

Voice Selfie lets you easily take photo or video selfies using voice control. You just need to turn this feature on in the camera settings.

Note: This feature may not be available in all languages.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **66** > **Selfie**.
- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Tap **②** > Camera options.

- 5. Select the **Voice Selfie** option, and then tap **5**.
- 6. Pose and frame yourself on the Viewfinder screen.
- 7. Look at the front camera, and then:
  - Say Say Cheese or Capture to take a photo selfie.
  - Say Action or Rolling to record a video selfie.

**Tip**: You can also use voice capture with the main camera. Tap **80** > **Camera**, and then turn on Voice capture in the camera settings.

#### Take Photos with the Self-timer

When you use the self-timer, the Camera app counts down before taking the shot. You can set the countdown time

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **88** > **Selfie**.
- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Tap if you see this icon, and then tap the countdown time that you want.
- 5. To start the timer, tap . The camera takes the photo after the countdown.

### Take a Panoramic Photo

Take a panoramic photo to get a wider shot of landscapes in one sweep.

**Note**: Some camera features are not available when you're in this mode, such as zooming.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **60** > **Panorama**.
- 3. Pan left or right in either landscape or portrait view. Hold your phone as smoothly as you can to automatically capture frames. You can also tap to stop capturing anytime.
- The camera stitches the frames into a single photo.

## Use HDR

When shooting portraits against a bright background, use HDR, short for High Dynamic Range, to capture your subjects clearly. HDR brings out the details of both the highlights and shadows, even in high contrast lighting.

**Note**: HDR works best when your subject is steady. The camera takes multiple shots at different exposure levels and combines them into one enhanced photo.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Tap **60** > **Camera**.
- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Tap O, and then tap .
- 5. To take an HDR photo, tap .

# Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode

Save a scene or custom settings as a new camera mode so you can conveniently use it anytime you need it.

- Tap ♠ > ●.
- 2. Switch to the camera mode you want to use.

**Note**: Some capture modes may not support modifying the camera settings.

- 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap to show the camera options.
- 4. Modify the settings as desired.
- 5. When done, tap 🍳 > Save custom camera.
- 6. Enter a name, and then tap **SAVE**.
- \* Tap on the viewfinder screen, and then tap your created capture mode whenever you want to use it.

## Modify a Customized Camera Mode

- Tap ♠> ●.
- 2. Switch to the camera mode that you've created.
- 3. Modify the scene or settings.
- 4. When done, tap **②** > **Save custom camera**.
- 5. Tap **Yes** to save changes to the existing mode.

# VIEW PICTURES AND VIDEOS USING GALLERY

Using the Gallery application, you can view pictures and watch videos that you've taken with your phone's camera, downloaded, or copied onto your storage card or phone memory. You can also take a look at your pictures and your friends' pictures that are on your social networks (Facebook and Flickr<sup>®</sup> only).

When viewing your photos and videos, the onscreen navigation buttons will be hidden. Tap anywhere on the screen to see Gallery controls and onscreen navigation buttons.

## View Pictures and Videos

You can access and view all your stored pictures and videos from your phone's Gallery.

#### View Photos and Videos Organized by Time

Photos and videos on your phone are grouped together in Timeline view according to when they were taken

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery = .
- 2. Tap == > **Timeline** to switch to Timeline view.
  - You'll then see tab icons for switching between different layouts.
    - Tap to see your photos and videos individually arranged in a feed.
    - Tap 

      to see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      It is a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and your photos and videos in a grid layout.

      To see your photos and your photos are photos and your photos are photos and your photos and your photos are photos are photos and your photos are photos and your photos are photos are photos and your photos are photos are photos are photos and your photos are photos
    - Tap to see your photos and videos organized by events.
    - Tap to see your photos and videos organized by year, then tap a month to see the shots you've taken at that time.
- 3. Tap a photo or video to see it in full screen.

You can also slide two fingers together or apart on the screen to scroll through the Timeline, feed, grid, and year layouts.

### View Photos and Videos by Album

You can choose to view your photos and videos grouped together in albums.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap == > **Albums** to switch to Albums view.
- 3. Tap a tile to open an album.
- 4. Tap a photo or video to see it in full screen.

## **View Your Favorite Photos**

Easily see all your favorite photos in one place. You can add photos to the **My favorites** album.

- To add a photo to the **My favorites** album, find and view the photo in full screen, tap the photo, and then tap \$\bigset\$ > **Favorite**.
- To view these favorite photos, open the My favorites album.

To remove a photo from the My favorites album, touch and hold the thumbnail and then tap
 Remove

#### **Show or Hide Albums**

Have too many albums cluttering your Gallery? You can choose to show or hide albums.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap = > Albums to switch to Albums view.
- 3. Tap > Show/hide albums.
- 4. Choose which albums you'd like to show or hide.

#### Rename an Album

If you have created albums to organize photos, you can rename these albums.

- Tap △ > .... > Gallery ....
- 2. Tap == > Albums to switch to Albums view.
- 3. Touch and hold the album you want to rename.
- 4. Tap Rename.

Note: Some albums, like Camera shots and Highlights, cannot be renamed.

## View Photos by Location

Using Map view, you can view photos according to location.

**Note**: Only photos with geo-tag info appear on the map.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap = > Locations to switch to Locations view.
- You'll see tiles of photos taken at specific locations, with numbers that indicate how many photos were taken in each location.
- 3. Tap to display Map view.
- 4. Zoom out or pan across the map until a numerical location indicator appears. The number in the location indicator shows how many photos were taken in that area.
- 5. Tap the location indicator to see the photos taken in that area.

**Tip**: Want to know where you took a particular photo? While viewing the photo in full screen, tap anywhere on the screen, and then tap • **Show on map**. (**Show on map** is available when you've enabled **Geo-tag photos** in Camera.)

#### **Add Location Information**

To be more specific about your photos, you can add names of points of interests (POI) to your photos, too.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap => Locations to switch to Locations view.
- 3. Tap a tile to open it.
- 4. Swipe to the PLACES tab.
- 5. Tap Tap to edit location > Add a new place.
- 6. Tap a point of interest to add a POI from Foursquare<sup>®</sup> or tap **New place** to manually enter a new name.
- 7. Tap SAVE.

### **Change Location Information**

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery ■.
- 2. Tap => Locations to switch to Locations view.
- 3. Tap a tile to open it.
- 4. Swipe to the PLACES tab.
- 5. Find the grouping you want to rename or edit, tap \*\*\*, and try one of the following:

| What to do          | How to do it  |
|---------------------|---|
| Select another POI  | 1. Tap Edit location > Tap to edit location.  |
|                     | Tap a point of interest to add a POI from Foursquare or tap     New place to manually enter a new name. |
|                     | 3. Tap <b>SAVE</b> .  |
| Rename the location | Tap <b>Rename this place</b> . You'll only see Rename this place if the name is stored on your phone.   |
|                     | 2. Enter a new name.  |
|                     | 3. Tap <b>SAVE</b> .  |

## Add Photos or Videos to an Album

You can add photos or videos to an existing album or a new one.

- 2. Tap \_\_\_\_, and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
- 3. Open a group of photos and videos, such as an event in Timeline view or an album.
- 4. Tap > Add to album.
- 5. Select the photos or videos you want to add, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 6. Create an album or select an album that you've already created in Gallery. To create a new album to move or copy to, tap +.

**Tip**: To add a single photo or video to an album, touch and hold the photo or video. Tap **Add to album**, and then select the destination album or create a new album.

# Copy or Move Photos or Videos Between Albums

It's easy to copy and move photos or videos between your albums.

- 2. Tap => Albums to switch to Albums view.
- 3. Tap a tile to open an album.
- 4. Tap > Move to or Copy to.
- 5. Select the photos or videos you want to move or copy and then tap **NEXT**.
- 6. Select an album to move or copy the photos or videos to. To create a new album to move or copy to, tap +.

# Tag Photos and Videos

Make your photos and videos easy to find by adding tags, such as short names or keywords.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery ■.
- 2. Tap \_\_\_\_, and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
- 3. Tap a tile to open a group of photos and videos.
- 4. Tap > Add tag.
- 5. Select items that you'll tag with the same keywords, then tap **NEXT**.
- 6. Type in a keyword, and then tap —. Or, to use an existing tag, just tap it below the text field.

- 7. Add more keywords when needed.
- 8. If you need to remove a tag you've added, just tap the tag, and then tap **OK**.
- 9. Tap SAVE.

**Tip**: To tag a single photo or video, touch and hold the photo or video. Tap **Add tag**, and then enter your keywords.

## View Tagged Photos and Videos

- 2. Tap == > Tags.
  - You'll see tiles of your used tags, with numbers that indicate how many photos and videos belong to each tag.
- 3. Tap a tile to open it and view tagged photos and videos.

### Rename a Tag

You can rename a tag that you've already added to your photos and videos.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap => Tags.
- 3. Find the tile of the tag you want to rename, then tap **Rename tag**.
- 4. Type the new tag name in the text field, then tap —.
- 5. Tap **OK** to save your changes.

#### Remove Tags

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap = > Tags.
- 3. Find the tile of the tag you want to modify.
- 4. To untag photos and videos, tap the tile, and then tap **\*> Remove tag**. Select the items, then tap **Remove**.
- 5. To completely delete a tag, tap **\*\*\*** in the tile, then tap **Remove tag**.

**Note**: Deleting a tag will not delete any of your photos and videos.

## Search for Photos and Videos

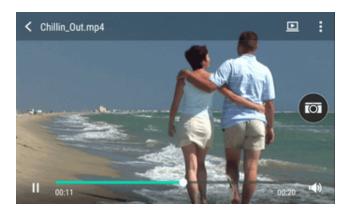
You can search the Gallery using tags and photo locations.

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery ■.
- 2. Tap **Q**.
- 3. In the search field, type a tag or a location associated with the photo or video you're looking for. You can also search for photo taken on a specific date. You must use the same date format as that set in **Settings > Date & time**, such as 01/13/2015.
- 4. Tap **←**.
- 5. Select what you want from the matching results.

### Trim Videos

While watching a video you've captured, you can trim it to remove unwanted scenes, and more.

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Open the video you want to play in full screen.
- 3. Tap the onscreen controls to pause or resume playback, adjust the volume, and more.



**Tip**: Tap **L** to share the video on your home network.

- 4. To trim the video, tap •> Edit.
- 5. Drag the trim sliders to the part where you want the video to begin and end.
- 6. Tap to preview your trimmed video.
- 7. Tap SAVE.

The trimmed video is saved as a new file. The original video remains unedited.

## Save a Photo From a Video

It's easy to save a still shot from a video.

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery = ...
- 2. When you see the video you want, tap it to play in full screen.
- 3. While watching the video, tap to capture a still shot.

You can also pause the playback and drag the slider to the image you want before tapping .



# View a Zoe Highlight in Gallery

When you view a group of photos and videos such as in an album, Gallery automatically composes a Zoe<sup>®</sup> highlight. A Zoe highlight is a collection of photos and videos that Gallery has preselected, with added background music and special effects.

- 2. Tap \_\_\_\_, and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.

**Note**: If you are in Timeline view, you need to go to the Revents or Year tab.

- 3. Tap a tile to open a group of photos and videos.
  - You'll then see a preview of the Zoe highlight play automatically.

If you want to edit the Zoe highlight in the Zoe app, tap the Zoe highlight tile in portrait view. To learn more about the Zoe app, go to zoe.com/help.

# One Gallery

See all your photos and videos in one place. With One Gallery, you can view all the photos and videos that are stored on your phone as well as on favored online services right from the Gallery app on your phone.

What's more, you can easily find similar photos and videos using Image match or by searching with keywords or tags. See Search for Photos and Videos.

## Turn On One Gallery

One Gallery lets you view your Facebook, Flickr, Google Drive, and Dropbox pictures and videos in Gallery.

- Tap △> : :: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap -> General Settings > One Gallery.
- 3. Tap **NEXT** and then select the online account you want to sign in with.
- 4. Choose the online services whose photos and videos you want to see in Gallery.
  - One Gallery will then sync with the accounts.
- 5. After the accounts have been synced, tap ✓.

You'll then be able to see your online photos and videos in Gallery.

## PHOTO EDITOR

Make your pictures even better. Photo Editor has an array of editing tools that let you crop, rotate, apply and create photo filters, and much more to your photos.

■ To open Photo Editor, tap △> :::: > Photo Editor <a> ™</a>.

## Basic Photo Editing

Here are some basic editing techniques that you can apply to your photos.

#### Choose a Photo to Edit

You can select photos to edit from Photo Editor or Gallery.

- 2. Tap **Gallery** to open an existing photo on your phone, and then browse for the item to edit. Or, tap **Camera** if you want to take a new photo to edit.
  - A slideout menu appears where you can choose editing options.

**Tip**: You can also tap while viewing a photo in full screen from the Gallery app.

## Adjust Your Photos

Use the available adjustment tools to crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos.

- Tap △>:::> Photo Editor and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials** > 14 **TOOLS**.
- 3. Choose to rotate, crop, flip, or straighten the photo.
- 4. Tap and make more adjustments, if needed.
- 5. Tap **1** to return to the Essentials screen.
- 6. Tap ✓ to save changes.

Except for when applying rotation, edited photos are saved as new photos. The original remains unedited.

#### Draw on a Photo

Scribble on your photos for fun or to highlight an interesting part.

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Photo Editor ✓ and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap Flair > ADRAW.
- 3. Drag the stroke slider to adjust the stroke thickness.
- 4. Tap ▲ to open the toolbar, choose a pen type, and then tap ▼ to hide the toolbar.
- 5. Choose a pen color from the color bar.
- 6. Draw on the photo. You can tap -> to switch to full screen view.
- 7. To undo or redo an action, open the toolbar, and then tap or . Or, you can use the eraser from the toolbar to remove specific parts of your drawing.
- 8. Tap ✓ when done.
- 9. Tap  $\triangle$ , and then tap  $\dagger *$  to toggle between the before and after photos.
- 10. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

## **Apply Photo Filters**

- Tap △> : :: > Photo Editor and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap Essentials.
- 3. Tap FILTERS, and then choose one of the available filters.
- 4. Tap **>**.
- 5. Tap A, and then tap \*\* to toggle between the before and after photos.
- 6. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

## **Create and Apply a Custom Filter**

- 1. Tap ♠> ⇒ ⇒ Photo Editor ⚠ and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials**.
- 3. Tap FILTERS, and then scroll to the end of the predefined filters bar.
- 4. Tap **CUSTOM**.
- 5. Make changes to the filter by adjusting the controls on exposure, saturation, white balance, and

more.

- 6. If you need to rearrange the order of your settings to achieve a particular effect, you can touch and hold a setting and drag it to a new position.
  - Rearranging the settings may reset values to the default.
- 7. Tap **>**.
- 8. Tap **1** to return to the Essentials screen.
- 9. Tap ✓ to save changes.
- \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

### Retouch Photos of People

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Photo Editor ☑ and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Touch Up**.
- 3. Choose a facial touch-up to apply, and then customize its settings.
- 4. Tap **>**.
- 5. Tap  $\triangle$ , and then tap  $\dagger *$  to toggle between the before and after photos.
- 6. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

### To fix red eye:

- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Photo Editor and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials**.
- 3. Tap RED EYE REMOVAL, and then tap .
- 4. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

## Creative Effects

Add creative effects such as shapes, prisms, and elements to your photos.

### **Shapes**

Add some pattern to your photo by adding and blending shapes.



- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Photo Editor  $\square$  and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **A SHAPES**.
- 3. Choose a shape to add to your photo, and then do any of the following:
  - Select a shape color by dragging the color slider.
  - Drag the shape to move it.
  - Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape to adjust its size.
  - Touch and hold the shape with two fingers and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
- 4. Tap **\( \text{to open the toolbar.} \)**
- 5. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .
- 6. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\boxed{2}$ , and then drag the slider to adjust the shape's opacity.
- 7. If you want to adjust your photo to blend with the shape, tap to switch from the shape layer to the photo layer.

8. Tap a setting to adjust its values, and then tap .



- 9. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

## **Photo Shapes**

Photo Shapes lets you add a shape to your image and fill it with another photo.



- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Photo Editor and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **A PHOTO SHAPES**.
- 3. Choose a second image to be the fill for your selected shape.
- 4. Choose a shape to add to your photo.
- 5. Tap of to switch to the shape layer. You should see the shape layer icon of.
- 6. Do any of the following:

• Drag the shape mask to move it.



- Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape mask to adjust its size.
- Touch and hold the shape mask with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
- Tap to return to the image layer, and then drag your fingers apart or together on the image to adjust the image size inside the mask.
- 7. Tap **\( \Lambda \)** to open the toolbar.
- 8. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .
- 9. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\triangle$ , and then tap a setting to adjust its values.
- 10. If you want to adjust your photo to blend with the image fill, tap to switch from the image fill layer to the photo layer.



- 11. Tap a setting and drag the slider to adjust its values, and then tap .
- 12. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

#### **Prismatic**

Got a bright and colorful image? Use Prismatic effect for fresh crystal prism patterns.



- 1. Tap △> ⇒ > Photo Editor ☑ and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **A PRISMATIC**.
- 3. Choose a prismatic pattern to apply to your photo.
- 4. Tap of to switch to the shape layer. You should see the shape layer icon of.
- 5. Do any of the following:
  - Drag the shape to move it.
  - Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape to adjust its size.
  - Touch and hold the shape with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
  - Tap to return to the image layer, and then drag your fingers apart or together on the image to adjust its size.
- 6. Tap **\( \Lambda \)** to open the toolbar.
- 7. Tap  $\mathbf{Z}$ , adjust the settings for your photo layer, and then tap  $\mathbf{Z}$ .
- 8. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

#### Double Exposure

With Double Exposure, combine and blend two photos and create something surreal.

- 1. Tap ♠> ⇒ > Photo Editor ▶ and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **OUBLE EXPOSURE**.
- 3. Choose your second image. This will be your top layer .



- 4. Do any of the following:
  - Drag the layer to move it.
  - Drag your fingers apart or together on the layer to adjust its size.
- 5. Tap **\( \Lambda \)** to open the toolbar.
- 6. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .
- 7. Tap  $\triangle$  >  $\triangle$ , tap a setting, and then drag the slider to adjust its values.
- 8. If you want to adjust your background layer to blend with the top layer, tap to switch to the background layer.



- 9. Tap a setting and drag the slider to adjust its values, and then tap **>**.
- 10. Tap ✓ to save changes.
  - \* The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

#### **Elements**

Add animated elements to your photo.



- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Photo Editor  $\square$  and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **ELEMENTS**.
- 3. Tap an element type to apply to your photo.
- 4. Tap **\( \text{to open the toolbar.} \)**
- 5. Tap **2**, draw an animation path or area for the selected effect, and then tap **1**.
- 6. Tap ← to adjust the animation speed and intensity.
- 7. Touch and hold an area with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate the animation
- 8. When you are satisfied with the result, tap  $\checkmark$  and choose to save as a photo or video.

#### Face Fusion

Wonder what you would like if you shared the same features as another person? Face Fusion uses a person's photo and a target face to merge the two photos into one.

To use Face Fusion, be sure that:

- The faces in each photo have to be 100 x 100 pixels or larger in size.
- Facial shots are without glasses and are not covered by hair, a hat, or any other item.
- Subjects should look towards the camera for best results.
- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Photo Editor  $\square$  and choose the photo you want to edit.
- 2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **FACE FUSION**.
- 3. Tap + and then browse to the photo that you want to merge with.

4. Drag the slider to apply Face Fusion to the image.



- 5. To choose another target face, just tap the thumbnail of the target person and browse to a new photo.
- 6. When you are satisfied with the result, tap  $\checkmark$  and choose to save as a photo or video.

# USEFUL APPS AND FEATURES

The following topics detail many of your phone's tools and features such as maps and navigation, calendar, clock, social networking apps, music, and more.

## **NAVIGATION**

Your phone offers a number of location-based navigation programs to help you figure out where you are and get you where you're going.

#### **Enable Location Services on Your Phone**

Before using any location-based services, you must enable your phone's location feature. For information about setting your phone's location options, see **Location Settings**.

## HTC Car

Now when you drive, you can easily use your phone to reach your destination, keep you entertained, and help you stay in touch with the people that matter to you. Get easy access to music, maps, navigation, and phone calls with HTC Car.

**Important: Using Your Phone While Driving** - Talking on or otherwise using your phone while driving (or operating the phone without a hands-free device) is prohibited in some jurisdictions. Laws vary as to specific restrictions. Remember that safety always comes first.

#### Launch HTC Car

- HTC Car instantly launches when you mount the phone in the HTC Car Kit (available separately). You can also tap △> : : > Car .
- 2. Swipe up or down to see what you can do in HTC Car.

**Tip**: When using HTC Car, return to the main screen from any other screen by tapping  $\hat{\Delta}$ .

When you remove your phone from HTC Car Kit, HTC Car will automatically exit. You can also manually close HTC Car by tapping from the main screen.

#### Use Voice Commands in HTC Car

Use your voice to control HTC Car.

- 1. In HTC Car, tap the screen with three fingers to activate voice command mode.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Call someone. Say "Call [person's name in phonebook]"
  - Play music. Say "Play [song title, album, artist name, or genre]"
  - Play the radio. Say "Listen to [song title, artist name, or genre]"
  - Find something on the map. Say "Find [name of place, address, type of place]"

### Find Places Using HTC Car

HTC Car helps you to find your way to where you want to go. Easily find nearby restaurants and more. HTC Car gives you the information you need so you won't get lost.

- 1. In HTC Car, tap **Navigation**.
- 2. To search for a place, tap **Q** and enter a location in the search box.
- 3. To look up a place that you've previously searched for, tap **Previous**.
- 4. To get directions for an upcoming event in Calendar, tap **Appointments** and tap an upcoming appointment.

## **Explore What's Around You**

With just a few taps, you can find interesting places around you quickly.

- 1. In HTC Car, tap **Navigation**.
- 2. Tap a category, for example **Restaurant** or **Parking** to see what's available near you.
- 3. Tap **Q** to enter your own search keywords.

#### Play Music in HTC Car

- 1. In HTC Car, tap Music.
- 2. Swipe left or right to browse by category.
- 3. Tap **Q** to search your collection.
- 4. Tap an album, song, or playlist to listen to it.

**Tip:** You can also play music by tapping **Speak** on the main screen and saying what you want to hear. For example, say "Play Beethoven's 5th".

#### Make Phone Calls in HTC Car

- Tap Dialer to open the dialpad.
- Tap **People** and then browse a category or search by entering a name.
- Tap Speak and say "Call" and the person's name. For example, say "Call Jennifer Singer."

#### Handle Incoming Calls in HTC Car

- If you hear a voice prompt, say "yes" or "no" to answer or decline a call.
- Tap Answer or Decline.

#### Customize HTC Car

- To change the default behavior of HTC Car, tap **Settings**.

# Google Maps

Use the Google Maps app to determine your location, find directions, browse local businesses and attractions, rate and review places, and more.

**Note**: To find your location with Google Maps, you need to enable location sources. For more information on location services, see **Location Setting**.

Note: The Google Maps application does not cover every country or city.

### **Get Around Maps**

When you open Google Maps, you can easily find your location on the map or check out nearby places by panning and zooming in and out on the map.

- Tap △> ::: > Maps ☒.
- 2. Tap  $\bullet$  to show your current location. The blue marker  $\bullet$  or  $\hat{\bullet}$  shows your location on the map.
- 3. Tap to turn Compass mode on. In Compass mode, the map orients itself depending on the direction you're facing. To exit Compass mode, tap •.
- 4. If you want to see more information overlaid on the map, tap \_\_\_\_\_, and then tap a map view such as **Traffic** or **Public transit** to toggle the view on and off.

#### Navigate the Map

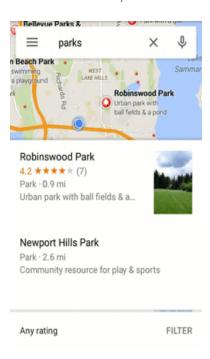
Navigate the map using finger gestures.

- Slide your finger on any direction to pan.
- Double-tap the map or slide two fingers apart over an area to zoom in. To zoom in while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb down.
- Double-tap the map with two fingers or slide two fingers together over an area to zoom out. To zoom out while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb up.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate the map.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then swipe up to see an angled view of the map. Swipe down to return to overhead view.

#### Search for a Location

In Google Maps, you can search for a location, such as an address or a type of business or establishment (for example, museums).

- 1. Tap △> .... > Maps 💆.
- 2. Tap the search box and then enter the place you want to search for.
- 3. Tap on the keyboard or tap a suggested search item. If there is only one search result, it will be marked with a place marker.



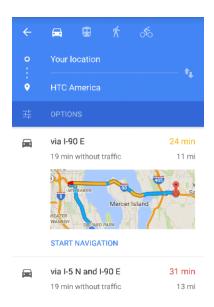
- 4. If there are multiple search results, they will be indicated by red dots or smart map icons. Swipe up from the bottom to see all of the search results.
- 5. If available, tap **FILTER** to narrow the search results.
- 6. Tap a card from the search results to check the address, get directions, see the location in Street View (if available), and more.
- 7. To check the next or previous location on the search, swipe the info sheet left or right.

To clear the map and search another location, swipe down the info sheet (if it's expanded), and then tap X.

#### **Get Directions**

Get detailed directions to your destination. Google Maps provides travel directions by car, public transit, bike, or foot.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Maps ※.
- 2. Tap •
- 3. Choose how you want to get to your destination.
- 4. Use your current location as starting point, or tap **Your location** to enter your starting point or select a location from your search history.
- 5. Tap **Choose destination**, and then enter or select your destination.



**Note**: If you're taking public transit, tap  $\stackrel{\blacksquare}{=}$  to set the date and time of travel, or tap **OPTIONS** to set your route preferences.

- 6. Tap a route or transit option to view the directions on the map. You'll also see the travel duration on the info sheet at the bottom of the screen.
- 7. Tap the info sheet to view the directions in a list.

When you're finished viewing or following the directions, tap X to reset the map. Your destination is automatically saved in the Google Maps history.

#### Get Help with Google Maps

Get help and more information about Maps.

■ In Google Maps, tap ==> **Help**. The Web browser opens and takes you to the Google Maps help site.

# **HANGOUTS**

Hangouts is Google's instant messaging service. Use to communicate with other Hangout users, and also use video calling. Log in to your Google Account beforehand (see Google Account).

### **Using Hangouts**

- Tap △> : :: > Hangouts ♥.
  - \* The Hangouts app will open.
- 2. Type a name, email, number, or circle, or select a contact from the list.
- 3. Type a message or tap to start a video chat.
  - A chat window or a video chat window opens.
    - Each time text is entered, the corresponding friend appears.
    - If a friend is not in a Hangout, you will see a message. Tap **INVITE** to invite them to join the Hangout.

## **Hangouts Operations**

- Ending a Chat: In the Hangouts window, flick the chat from left to right.
- Ending a Video Chat: In the video chat window, tap
- Disabling Chat History: If you don't want to keep chat history, in the chat window, tap \$> Turn history off.
- Delete Chat History: To delete all your chat history, in the chat window, tap > Delete > DELETE.

**Note**: You can use Hangouts as your phone's default messaging app, or as a standalone IM app. If you set Hangouts as the default messaging app, the Messages app will be disabled. For more information, see **More Wireless & Network Settings**.

# **CALCULATOR**

Your phone's convenient built-in calculator lets you perform basic mathematical equations.

- 2. Enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys.
- 3. Do any of the following:
  - Turn your phone sideways to switch to a scientific calculator, and then enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys. The scientific calculator lets you perform more complex calculations with square root, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.

- Tap **DEL** to remove one digit at a time. Touch and hold **DEL** to delete the entire number.
- 4. Tap **=** for the result.

## CALENDAR

Use Calendar to create and manage events, meetings, and appointments. Your Calendar helps organize your time and reminds you of important events. Depending on your synchronization settings, your phone's Calendar stays in sync with your Calendar on the Web, Exchange ActiveSync calendar, Google Calendar, and Outlook calendar.

In order to sync with your Google calendar, you must sign in to your Google Account on your phone. See Google Account.

### **Calendar Operations**

- View Today's Calendar: From the Calendar, tap
- Change Calendar View: From the Calendar, tap and then tap Month, Week, Day, Agenda, or Invites to change the current view.
- View Next/Previous Month (Month View): From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- View Next/Previous Week (Week View): From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- View Next/Previous Day (Day View): From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- View the Next/Previous Time Period (Day/Week View): From the Calendar, flick the screen flick the screen left or right.

#### Select a Calendar

- If you have more than one calendar, select a calendar in which to add events:
  - Select My Calendar to create an event that will appear only on your phone.
  - Select your Google Account to create a Google Calendar event. If you have several Google Calendars on the Web, select one in which to add your event.
    - You can create multiple Google Calendars only in Google Calendar on the Web. After creating them in Google Calendar on the Web, you'll be able to see them in the Calendar application on your phone. For more information about creating and managing multiple Google Calendars, visit the Google website: <u>calendar.google.com</u>.
  - If you have synchronized your phone with an Exchange ActiveSync account or Outlook on your computer, you can also select these calendars.
  - Select **PC Sync** to create an Outlook Calendar event to sync with your computer.
- Select Exchange to create an Exchange ActiveSync calendar event.

## Schedule or Edit an Event

You can create or edit events on your phone, and also sync events with your Google or Exchange ActiveSync calendars.

**Note**: Editing events is not supported for all accounts.

- Tap △> : :: > Calendar ...
- 2. On any Calendar view, do one of the following:

  - Edit an event. View an event, and then tap  $\Delta$ .
- 3. Enter and set the event details.
- 4. To invite from your Google or Exchange ActiveSync account, tap 2.
- 5. Tap **SAVE**. Or if you've invited people to the event, tap **SEND** or **SEND UPDATE**.

#### Check Your Schedule for an Event

Avoid juggling multiple meetings at the same time. In Calendar, you can check your appointments to see if a new event would conflict with your schedule.

- 1. When creating or editing an event, tap **Check calendar**.
- 2. Touch and hold the event box, and then drag it to an available time slot.
- 3. Drag the top and bottom nodes to adjust the event's time duration. You'll see a message if there are conflicts with other scheduled events.
- 4. Tap **Done** to return to the event screen, and then save your event.

#### View Calendar Events

You can display the Calendar in daily, weekly, monthly, or agenda view. To change the Calendar view, tap **v** and then tap **Year**, **Month**, **Week**, **Day**, or **Agenda**.

- - The Calendar app opens.
- 2. Tap a date and then tap an event.
  - The event details appear.
    - In event details, tap to edit the event.
    - In event details, tap > Delete event and follow the prompts.

## Choose Which Calendar to Show

You have the option to show only the calendars that you frequently use. You can also show or hide tasks that you've created in your phone.

- Tap △> : :: > Calendar ...
- 2. Tap > Accounts (All calendars) or Accounts (Multi-calendar).
- 3. Select or clear an account you wish to show or hide. If you have multiple calendars under an online account, tap **\_\_\_** to select the items to include.

**Note**: Calendars are synced on your phone, even if they are hidden.

### Calendar Events Not Showing?

If you can't find events from your email accounts or social networks in Calendar, check whether the Calendar sync is turned on in Settings.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap **②** > **Accounts & sync**.
- 2. Tap an account type. If multiple accounts are supported (such as Exchange ActiveSync), tap the account you want to sync.
- 3. Select Calendar, and then tap > Sync now.

# Share an Event (vCalendar)

You can share a calendar event as a vCalendar using Bluetooth or by sending it as a file attachment with your email or message.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > Calendar ...
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - While viewing an event, tap > Share via.
  - In day, agenda or week view, touch and hold an event and then tap **Share via**.
- 3. Choose how you want to send the event.

**Tip**: You can also forward accepted meeting invitations from your Exchange ActiveSync calendar. While viewing an event, tap **2** > **Forward**. Compose your email message, and then send it.

# Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation

Switch to the Invites view to see meeting invitations which you have not yet accepted or declined.

Note: You must set up an Exchange ActiveSync account to receive meeting invitations in Calendar.

- 1. Tap △> :::: > Calendar ...
- 2. Tap ▼ > Invites, and then tap a meeting invitation.
- 3. Accept, decline, or tentatively accept the invitation, or propose a new time.

**Tip**: Tap to choose from more options, such as moving the invitation to a folder.

If you need to cancel an accepted meeting invitation or propose a new time, view the event details in Calendar, and then tap **RESPONSE**.

## Dismiss or Snooze Reminders

If you have set at least one reminder for an event, the upcoming event icon will appear in the notifications area of the status bar to remind you.

- 1. Drag the Status Bar down to open the Notifications panel.
- 2. If the notification shows that there are multiple reminders, tap it to see all the reminders. You can then choose to snooze or dismiss them.
- 3. If you see a single event notification, spread your two fingers on the notification to expand it. You can then:
  - Tap **SNOOZE** or **DISMISS**. Or drag the notification left or right to dismiss it.
  - Tap **SEND MAIL** to send a quick response to the meeting attendees.

**Tip**: To edit the preset quick responses or add your own, open Calendar, and then tap **\bilde{\bilde}** > **Settings** > **Quick response**.

If you don't want to dismiss or snooze the calendar reminders, tap from the Notifications panel to keep them pending in the notifications area of the status bar.

# CLOCK

Your phone has a clock app that lets you set alarms, view time in time zones around the world, use a stopwatch, set a timer, and use your phone as a desk clock.

## Check the Time

You can check the phone any time on your phone. The current time displays in the upper right corner of the status bar. Many widgets and lock screens also display the time and provide options for how time is displayed.

# Set the Date and Time Manually

You can change your date and time.

- 1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  $\triangle > \square > Clock \bigcirc$ .
- 2. On the **WORLD CLOCK** tab, tap > **Local time settings**.
- 3. Clear **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone**, and then set the time zone, date, and time as required.

**Tip**: To display military time, choose the **Use 24-hour format** option.

### Set an Alarm

You can set up one or more alarms.

- 2. On the **ALARMS** tab, select the check button of an alarm and then tap that alarm.
- 3. Under Set alarm, use the scroll wheels to set the alarm time.
- 4. If you want the alarm for multiple days, tap **Repeat**.
- 5. Tap **DONE**.
- 6. If you need to set more than three alarms, tap +.

**Tip**: To turn off an alarm, clear the check box of that alarm.

#### Phone at Alarm Time

- At the set alarm time, the phone sounds the alarm and/or vibrates.
- Stopping an alarm: When the alarm sounds, drag ⊗ up to dismiss it.

### Additional Clock Features

Your phone's clock app provides additional useful features including world clock, stopwatch, and timer functions.

#### World Clock

The world clock lets you keep track of the current time in multiple cities around the globe.

- 2. Swipe to the WORLD CLOCK tab.
- 3. Tap + and select a city.
- 4. Repeat to add multiple cities.

#### Stopwatch

The stopwatch lets you time events down to the hundredth of a second.

- 2. Swipe to the **STOPWATCH** tab.
- 3. Tap **START** to begin timing.
- 4. Tap **STOP** to stop timing.
  - Additional options include LAP to keep track of laps and RESET to continue timing.

#### Timer

The timer provides a countdown timer for up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds.

- 1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  $\triangle > \square > Clock \bigcirc$ .
- 2. Swipe to the **TIMER** tab.
- 3. Use the scroll wheels to set the length of the time.
- 4. Tap **START** to begin the timer.

## CHECK THE WEATHER

Use the Weather app and widget to check the current weather and weather forecasts for the next few days. In addition to your current location, you can view weather forecasts for other cities around the globe.

- 1. Tap ♠> > > > Weather ♠. You'll see the weather from different cities, including where you are.
- 2. Tap a city to view weather information.
- 3. Swipe to the **HOURLY** and **FORECAST** tabs to view the forecasts in your selected location.
- 4. To check the weather in other cities, tap , and then select the city you want.
- 5. To add more cities, tap + and then enter the location.

Your settings in the Weather app also control the weather information that is shown in the Clock and Calendar apps.

# **TWITTER**

Tweet (post messages) and view other people's tweets on Twitter. Login may be required to use Twitter. For details on Twitter, visit **twitter.com**.

# Install the Twitter App on Your Phone

Before you can use Twitter on your phone, you have to download and install the app from Google Play.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap **Q** and search for "twitter".
- 3. Tap **Twitter** from the results list.
- 4. Tap INSTALL, and then tap ACCEPT.
- 5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, tap :::>
  Twitter

## Tweet on Twitter

Read Twitter feeds, follow your friends, and tweet your own updates right from your phone.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Twitter
  - The Twitter app launches.
    - If this is the first time you've used Twitter on your phone, tap **Log in** to sign in to an existing account, or tap **Sign up** to set up a new Twitter account.
- 2. Tap the "What's happening?" field, type a tweet, and tap **TWEET**.
  - \* The tweet is sent and appears on your Twitter feed.

# **FACEBOOK**

Post updates, read what your friends are up to, upload pictures and check-ins, and more with onthe-go Facebook access.

# Install the Facebook App on Your Phone

Before you use Facebook on your phone, you must download and install the app from the Google Play Store app.

- Tap △> : ::> Play Store ▶.
- 2. Tap **Q** and search for "facebook".
- 3. Tap **Facebook** from the results list.
- 4. Tap INSTALL, and then tap ACCEPT.
- 5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, tap **Facebook**.

## Use Facebook

Once you've downloaded the app and signed in, you can post and read updates, upload pictures, tag locations, and more, all from your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Facebook f.
  - The Facebook app launches.
    - If this is the first time you've used Facebook on your phone, enter your Facebook ID and
      password and tap LOG IN to sign in to an existing account, or tap Sign Up for Facebook
      to set up a new Facebook account.
- 2. Tap **STATUS** and type an update, tap **PHOTO** and upload a picture from the gallery, tap **CHECK IN** to share your location, "Like" and comment on friends' posts, and more.

# YOUTUBE

View videos uploaded to YouTube and upload your own videos to your YouTube account.

#### Watch YouTube Videos

- Tap △> : :: > YouTube □.
- 2. Browse or search for a video.
- 3. Tap the one you want to watch.
- 4. While watching a video, you can:
  - Turn the phone sideways to watch the video in full screen.
  - Tap the video screen to pause, resume playback, or drag the slider to jump to a different part of the video.
  - Scroll down the video information panel to see the description, related videos, or comments from other viewers.
  - Browse other videos by minimizing the video screen. Tap 
     ✓ or drag the video screen
     down to minimize. To close the video thumbnail, swipe it left or right.

**Tip**: If you want to watch the video at a later time, tap 

→, and then tap **Watch later**. You can access the video again from your account profile's Watch Later list.

#### Search for Videos

- Tap ♠ > YouTube ▶.
- 2. Tap **Q**.
- 3. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for. As you type, matching items are shown as a list.

**Tip**: Tap **\( \rightarrow\)** to enter it in the search box. New suggestions appear and you can enter more text or tap **\( \rightarrow\)** beside a subsequent suggestion to quickly refine your search.

- 4. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, tap the item.
- 5. To show results which were just recently posted, tap 🚾, tap All time, and then select a time period you want.
- 6. Scroll through the results and tap a video to watch it.

#### Share a Video Link

- Tap ♠> ::: > YouTube ▶.
- 2. Tap a video or search for a video and then tap it.
- 3. Tap the video screen, and then tap <.
- 4. Choose how you want to share the video link from the available options.

#### Create Video Playlists

Organize your favorite videos into playlists and watch them in the YouTube app.

Note: Make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account.

- 2. Browse or search for a video.
- 3. Touch next to the video title, and then touch **Add to Playlist > New playlist**.
- 4. Enter the playlist name, and then tap **OK**.

**Tip**: If you don't want to share the video playlist, select **Private** before you tap **OK**.

- 5. To add another video to your playlist, browse or search for the video, and then tap next to the video title.
- 6. Tap **Add to Playlist** and then tap the playlist name.

To access and watch your video playlists, minimize the video screen, and then tap to open the slideout menu. Tap the playlist you want.

# MUSIC APPS AND SOUND ENHANCEMENTS

Your phone lets you discover, download, and listen to your favorite music through a variety of music apps. You can use Music or Google Play Music app.

# Listen to Music

Enjoy your favorite songs on your phone using the Music application.

**Note**: When you open the Music app for the first time, you'll be asked if you would like to automatically download related content, such as album covers and artist photos, to your phone.

- 1. Tap **△**> **∷**> Music **√**.
- 2. Swipe to the different tabs to browse by category.
- 3. Tap a song to play.
- 4. Tap the onscreen icons to control music playback, repeat songs and more.



- Tap and drag your finger across the progress bar to jump to any part of the song.
- Tap > to turn shuffle on or off. (Shuffle is off when button is gray.)
- Tap to cycle through the repeat modes: repeat all songs, repeat current song, and don't repeat.
- Tap to play your music on a DLNA® compliant TV or audio system, HTC Media Link HD, or stereo Bluetooth device.
- ullet Tap ullet to minimize the Now playing screen to continue browsing your music collection.
- Press the Volume Up or Volume Down Button to adjust the playback volume.

**Note**: When you're listening to music and the screen display turns off, press the **Power/Lock Button** to turn the screen back on and control the music playback directly on the lock screen.

**Tip**: You can also control music playback right from the Notifications panel.

# Create and Work with Playlists

Personalize your music experience by creating music playlists. Make a playlist containing just your favorite songs or create one to match your mood for the day.

# **Create Playlists**

You can make as many playlists as you like on your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Music √.
- 2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
- 3. Tap + and then enter a playlist name.
- 4. To add songs, tap + beside the title field, browse your music collection, and then tap a song to add. Repeat this step to add more songs.
- 5. You can also:
  - Rearrange songs. Touch and hold next to the song title you want to move and then drag it to its new position.
  - **Delete songs**. Select the songs you want to remove from the playlist.
  - Change playlist name. Enter a new name for the playlist in the title field.

#### 6. Tap SAVE.

To edit a playlist you've created, swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab on the Music app's main screen. Tap a playlist, and then tap \$\bigset\$ > **Edit playlist**.

#### Play the Songs in a Playlist

- Tap ♠> ::: > Music ♠.
- 2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
- 3. Tap a playlist, and then tap the song you want to play first.
- The song starts playing on the **NOW PLAYING** tab.

#### **Delete Your Playlists**

Follow these steps to delete playlists that you no longer use.

**Note**: The Recently played and the Recently added playlists can't be deleted.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Music ♠.
- 2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
- 3. Touch and hold the playlist you want to delete, and then tap **Delete playlist**.

4. To remove several playlists, tap • > Delete playlists.

# Add a Song to the Queue

While playing a song, you can also browse other tracks stored on your phone. Add a song or an album to the queue so it plays when the current playlist has finished playing.

- 1. While a song is playing, browse for other tracks.
- 2. Do any of the following:
  - Browse for the album or playlist that you want, touch and hold it, and then tap **Add to queue**.
  - Browse for an artist or song, and then tap ●●● > Add to queue.

The songs you've added appear on the **QUEUE** tab.

# **Update Album Covers and Artist Photos**

**Note**: To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

- Tap △> ::: > Music √0.
- 2. Swipe to the ARTISTS or ALBUMS tab.
- 3. Tap \$> Update artist photos or Update album art.

If you want your phone to automatically check and update your music collection, tap on the Music app's main screen, and then tap **Settings**. Select **Album art** and **Artist photos**.

# Set a Song as a Ringtone

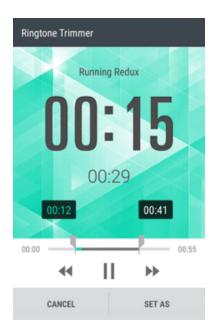
Pick a song from your Music library and set it as your ringtone or as ringtone for a favorite contact.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Music ♠.
- 2. Play the song that you want to set as a ringtone.
- 3. Tap > Set as ringtone.
- 4. Tap **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**. If you select **Contact ringtone**, choose the contacts you want to associate the ringtone with.

#### Trim an MP3 Ringtone

Use the Music app's ringtone trimmer if you want to set only a part of the song as ringtone.

1. When you find the song that you want, tap > Set as ringtone > Trim the ringtone.



- 2. Drag the trim sliders 1 to the part where you want the ringtone to begin and end. For a more precise trimming, tap the left or right arrow buttons. Time markers indicate where you are on the song.
- 3. When you're done trimming, tap **SET AS**.
- 4. Choose whether to set your trimmed song as your **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**.

**Note**: You can see your new ringtone in the phone settings. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  $\bigcirc$  > **Sound & notification >Ringtone**.

# Search for Lyrics, Music Videos, and More

Take your music entertainment to a whole new level with lyrics, music videos, artists' information, and visualizations.

#### **View Song Lyrics**

Sing along with your favorite music tracks. Your phone gives your music an extra kick with song lyrics and cool music visualizations.

**Note**: To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Music ♠.
- 2. Browse to the song you want to play and tap it.
- 3. Swipe to the **VISUALIZER** tab to view the lyrics. Song lyrics appear onscreen if content has been successfully downloaded.

**Tip**: Want a different visual for your music? Tap • > **Scene** and select a scene. If you want the scene to change for every song, select **Random**.

- 4. Tap the screen to display the lyrics in full screen.
- 5. To jump to another part of the song, tap the screen to make the progress bar appear. Tap and drag your finger across the progress bar, or touch and hold  $\blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleleft$  or  $\blacktriangleright \blacktriangleright$ .

#### Find Music Videos on YouTube

It's easy to find music videos of the song you're listening to on YouTube.

On the NOW PLAYING tab, tap > Search > YouTube.

# Google Play Music App

The Google Play Music app lets you browse, shop, and play back songs purchased from Google Play as well as songs you have loaded from your own music library. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Play Music library and instantly ready to play via streaming or download.

For more information about Google Play Music, visit play.google.com/about/music.

**Note**: For information about loading music onto your phone, see <u>Transfer Files Between Your Phone and a Computer</u>.

# Play Music with Google Play

Use the Google Play Music app to listen to all your music on your phone. Check the Google Play Music help for compatible music file formats.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Play Music  $\bigcirc$ .
- 2. Tap == > **My Library**.
- 3. Flick the screen left or right to select a library category such as **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS**.
- 4. Tap an item from the category window and then tap a song.
  - The song begins playing.

# Google Play Music Screen Layout

The following diagram outlines the main features of the Play Music app player screen.



# Create Playlists in Google Play Music

Organize music into playlists to fit every occasion.

- Tap △> : :: > Play Music ○.
- 2. Tap == > **My Library**.
- 3. Flick the screen left or right to select a library category such as **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS**.
- 4. Tap an item from the category window and then tap a song.
  - \* The song begins playing.
- 5. Tap > Add to playlist
- 6. Select whether you want to add the song to a new playlist or to an existing playlist.
- 7. Follow screen instructions to proceed.

# **GOOGLE WALLET**

You must have a Google Wallet account associated with your Google Account to purchase items from the Google Play Store app.

To create a Google Wallet account, do one of the following:

On your computer, go to google.com/wallet to create a Google Wallet account.

-or-

■ The first time you use your phone to buy an item from Google Play, you're prompted to enter your billing information to set up a Google Wallet account.

**Warning**: When you've used Google Wallet once to purchase an application from the Google Play Store app, the phone remembers your password, so you don't need to enter it the next time. For this reason, you should secure your phone to prevent others from using it without your permission. (For more information, see Screen Lock Settings.)

# ONLINE STORAGE AND FILE MANAGEMENT

Save your files online by setting up online storages and organize your files using File Manager.

# Google Drive

Store your photos, documents, and other files on Google Drive to access them on your phone, your computer, and your other mobile devices. On your phone, just use your Google Account to sign in to your Google Drive storage.

#### You can then:

- Use Gallery to upload your captured photos to Google Drive.
- Share a link to your Google Drive files by email.
- View and edit Office documents that are stored in Google Drive. After creating new Office documents, you can also save them to Google Drive.
- View PDFs that are stored in Google Drive. You can also export Office documents as PDFs to Google Drive.
- Check your available Google Drive storage space in Settings.
- Back up your phone to Google Drive, so you can easily restore your backup to another HTC phone next time.
- Use the Google Drive app to manage your online storage.

#### Activate Your Free Google Drive Storage

Use up to 115GB of free Google Drive storage. In addition to the default storage that you get from Google Drive, your phone features an additional 100GB of online storage free for two years. Sign in to your Google Account on your HTC phone (and not from your computer or other non-HTC phones) to claim this offer.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Drive  $\triangle$ . If this app is not preloaded on your phone, you can download it from Google Play.
- 2. If this is your first time to open the Drive app, walk through the product tour until you see the additional storage offer.

If you've opened this app before and currently don't see the screen for redeeming the offer, tap

Settings > Product Tour to walk through the product tour.

- 3. On the screen that shows the additional storage offer, tap **Redeem**. Or to claim the offer at a later time, tap **Offer Details** and check up to when you can redeem the offer.
  - The additional storage will then be added to your account.
- 4. Follow the onscreen prompts to learn the things you can do with Google Drive.

**Note**: Additional terms and requirements may apply (including a subscription fee) after your twoyear trial expires. For details, refer to the terms and conditions on the Google Drive support site support.google.com.

**Note**: The Drive app is owned by Google and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

**Note**: Uploading files requires you have the Drive app installed on your phone. If this app is not preloaded, you can download and install it from Google Play.

# Check Your Google Drive Storage Space

Check you available storage space right in the Google Drive app.

- Tap △> ::: > Drive △.
- 2. Tap \_\_\_\_. You'll see your storage space on the slideout menu.

From time to time, check back on how much online storage space you still have before you upload more content.

# Upload Your Photos and Videos to Google Drive

Use Gallery to upload your photos and videos to Google Drive.

- Tap △> ::: > Gallery = ...
- 2. Tap \_\_\_\_, and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
- 3. Tap an album or event that contains the photos and videos you want to share.
- 4. Tap 🔽.
- 5. From the selection menu, tap **Drive**.

- 6. Select the photos and videos you want to upload, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 7. Choose or create a folder in Google Drive.
- 8. Tap **SAVE** to upload.

# HTC Sync Manager

With HTC Sync Manager, enjoy the same media whether you're at your computer or on the move. Use it also to store your same contacts, important documents, and other data on both your phone and your computer.

HTC Sync Manager supports a computer running Windows or Mac OS.

Here are the things you can do with HTC Sync Manager.

#### View and manage media on your computer

- Browse and manage music, photos, and videos that are on your computer and your phone.
- Import iTunes and Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Player playlists from your computer to HTC Sync Manager.
- Play music, videos, and playlists using the built-in player.

#### Transfer content

- Transfer iPhone photos, text messages, contacts, and more to your HTC phone. You can also find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.
- Import all music, photos, and videos from your HTC phone to your computer.
- Copy selected music, photos, or videos from your computer to your phone.
- Import documents from your computer to your phone.
- **Back up and restore**. Back up your HTC phone to your computer so you can easily restore your backup to the same phone or to another phone.
- Sync playlists and data. Sync music playlists and data such as contacts, calendar, and Web bookmarks between your phone and your computer.

#### Install HTC Sync Manager on a Windows Computer

Follow the steps below to install HTC Sync Manager on your computer.

**Important**: You can install HTC Sync Manager on Windows XP or later versions. To install it on a Mac computer, you need Mac OS 10.6 or later versions.

**Important**: If you have problem with installing HTC Sync Manager, close all your running programs and reinstall. If the problem persists, temporarily disable your anti-virus program and try installing again.

- 1. Download the HTC Sync Manager installer from <a href="https://html.ncbm/hsm.ncbm/hsm">https://html.ncbm/hsm</a>.
- 2. Launch the installer and follow the onscreen instructions.
- 3. Connect your phone to your computer using the supplied USB cable. HTC Sync Manager opens.

**Important**: If you disabled your anti-virus program, make sure to turn it back on after installing HTC Sync Manager.

#### Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone

With HTC Sync Manager, easily transfer iPhone content such as contacts, messages, wallpaper, camera photos, and more to your HTC phone. If you're using an HTC phone that has HTC Sense 6, HTC Sync Manager also enables your phone to find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.

**Note**: You need to use iTunes 9.0 or later to back up your iPhone content first to your computer.

- 1. Connect your iPhone and your HTC phone to your computer.
- 2. In HTC Sync Manager, click **Home > Transfer & Backup**.
- 3. Click the Get Started button.
- 4. If you haven't used iTunes to back up your iPhone content to your computer, please do so before proceeding.
- 5. Select your iPhone backup file, and then click **OK**.
- 6. Select the types of content you want to transfer to your HTC phone.

You can choose whether to replace the content on your HTC phone with the iPhone content.

- 7. Click **Start**. Wait for HTC Sync Manager to finish transferring content.
- 8. When done, slide open the Notifications panel on your HTC phone, and then tap ①.
- 9. Choose which apps you were using on iPhone you want to find in Google Play and download to your HTC phone.

#### Get Help

To find out more about using HTC Sync Manager, download the user guide PDF from the HTC support site (<a href="https://htc.com/hsm">https://htc.com/hsm</a>). Or open the Help that comes with the software.

**Tip**: On Windows, click in HTC Sync Manager, and then click **Help**.

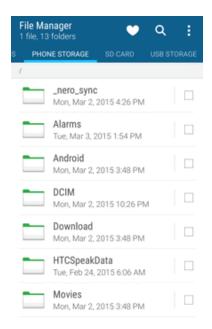
# File Manager

Use the File Manager app to browse and organize your files and folders on your phone storage and storage card. You can also use File Manager to browse for files and folders on your external USB storage device when you have it connected to your phone.

# Switch Between Storage Types

Select an available storage on your phone that you want to manage.

- 1. Tap △> ::: > File Manager □...
- 2. Swipe left or right to switch to a file storage where you want to browse or organize your files.



#### Search for Files

It's easy to find files and documents using File Manager.

- 1. Tap △> :::: > File Manager □
- 2. Tap **Q**.
- 3. In the search box, enter a few characters of the filename. Matching filenames from the root and subfolders are then displayed.
- 4. Tap a file to open it.

#### **Organize Your Files**

Use the File Manager app to sort, copy, move, or delete your files and documents.

#### **Sort Your Files**

- 1. Tap △> ::: > File Manager —.
- 2. Tap > Sort, and then choose a sorting option.

#### Copy or Move Your Files

- 1. Tap △> :::: > File Manager □
- 2. Browse for and select the file or folder you want to copy or move.
- 3. Tap COPY or MOVE TO.
- 4. Tap , and then browse for the folder where you want to copy or move the files. Or tap > Create folder to create a new folder.
- 5. Tap PASTE.

#### Make Files as Favorites

- 1. Tap △> ::: > File Manager □...
- 2. Browse for the file or folder.
- 3. Select items to favorite.
- 4. Tap .

**Tip**: To remove an item from the Favorites tab, select the item and tap **Remove from favorites**.

#### **Delete Files or Folders**

- 1. Tap △> :::: > File Manager □.
- 2. Select items to delete.
- 3. Tap **DELETE**.

# **VOICE RECORDER**

Use Voice Recorder to capture information during lectures, interviews, or even to create your own audio log.

#### Record Your Voice

Start creating voice memos on your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Voice Recorder
- 2. Hold the microphone near the sound source.
- 3. Tap to start recording a voice clip.

**Note**: Voice Recorder can run in the background while you do other things on your phone, except when you open other applications that also use audio functions.

- 4. Tap to stop recording.
- 5. To play back the voice clip, tap

**Tip**: To see your recorded voice clips, tap  $\leq$ . Touch and hold a voice clip to see options for sharing, setting it as a ringtone, and more.

# HTC DOT VIEW

If you bought the HTC Dot View™ case designed for HTC Desire 626s, use its app to personalize what's seen through the case. Choose your wallpaper, types of notifications to display, and more.

**Note**: The HTC Dot View app is available in Google Play. Make sure to install the latest app update.

# Change the HTC Dot View Wallpaper

Choose a preset wallpaper, or create your own dotted wallpaper from a photo.

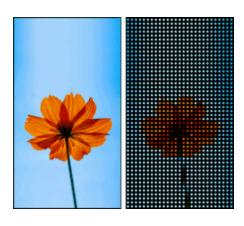
- Tap △> ::: > HTC Dot View <sup>(2)</sup>
- 2. Tap Themes.
- 3. Choose a preset pattern as your wallpaper.

-or-

To create your own wallpaper, tap +, and then choose whether to use an existing photo from Gallery or take a new photo. If you selected or taken a photo, crop the photo, and then tap **DONE**.

4. Tap APPLY.

For best results when creating your own wallpaper, use a simple image with distinct colors between the subject and background. For example, use an image that shows a high-contrast subject on a simple background.





# Select Which Notifications to Display

Alerts for clock alarms, timers, calendar events, and tasks will automatically display through the HTC Dot View case. You can choose whether to display or hide Mail, Messages, and phone call notifications.

- Tap △> ::: > HTC Dot View <sup>(S)</sup>
- 2. Tap => Settings > Notification settings.
- 3. Choose which notifications you want to show or hide.

# See Recent Calls on HTC Dot View

By default, up to 3 received or dialed numbers will be displayed on HTC Dot View.

- 1. Tap △> :::: > HTC Dot View .
- 2. Tap == > **Settings**.
  - If you're not seeing recent calls, select **Show call history**.
  - If you've set a screen lock with credentials, select **Bypass security screen** to display the recent calls.

# **HTC Dot View Troubleshooting**

When music controls or app notifications are not appearing on HTC Dot View, check the HTC Dot View music controls and notification settings.

- 1. Swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Notification access.
- Select the HTC Dot View Music Controls and HTC Dot View Notifications options if they're not selected.

Tip: For more details on using HTC Dot View, visit <a href="https://example.com">httc.com</a>.

# HTC HELP

Before calling for support, you can first use the Help app to troubleshoot or perform diagnostics on your phone. This helps you in finding the problem cause, and in determining whether you can resolve the problem or you need to call for support.

■ Tap **\( \rightarrow \)** > **\( \rightarrow \)** Help **\( \box** \).

**Note**: If HTC Help is not preinstalled on your phone, you can download it from the Google Play Store app.

# CONNECTIVITY

The following topics address your phone's connectivity options, including USB file transfer and tethering, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, IR connectivity, and more.

# TRANSFER FILES BETWEEN YOUR PHONE AND A COMPUTER

You can use the supplied USB connector to connect your phone directly to your computer and transfer music, pictures, and other content files.

For example, if you have a music album stored on your computer that you want to listen to on your phone with any of the music apps, just attach your phone to the computer and copy the files to the music folder.

#### File Transfer Tips

- If you want to save data to an SD card on your phone, make sure the SD card is installed and active. See SD Card.
- Avoid removing the SD card while transferring data.
- Data exchange may use the methods outlined in the following table:

| Method             | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Media Device (MTP) | Transfer files between your phone and PC such as pictures, videos, and music. |
| Mass Storage Mode  | Exchange data with a PC using your phone as an external storage device.       |

#### Transfer Files Between the Phone and a Computer

- 1. Connect your phone to your computer using the supplied USB/charging cable.
  - Insert the larger end of the cable to the charger/accessory jack at the bottom of the phone.
  - Insert the USB end of the cable into an available USB port on your computer. You may need to remove the USB cable from the charging head to access it.
- 2. When papears in the notifications area, drag the status bar down to display the notifications window.
  - You will see **Media device [MTP] connected** and the files on your phone can now be accessed via your computer.

- 3. On your computer, navigate to the detected device (such as through the My Computer menu) and open it.
- 4. If available, select a drive (**SD** card for SD card storage or **Internal storage** for internal phone storage).
- 5. Select a folder (for example, **Music** for songs and albums) and copy files to it from your computer.
- 6. When you are done, disconnect your phone from your computer.
  - The transferred files are now saved to your phone or SD card.

# WI-FI

Wi-Fi provides wireless Internet access over distances of up to 300 feet. To use your phone's Wi-Fi, you need access to a wireless access point or "hotspot."

**Note**: The availability and range of the Wi-Fi signal depends on a number of factors, including infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

# Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network

It's quick and easy to turn Wi-Fi on and connect to a wireless network.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the WI-FI tile to turn Wi-Fi on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **WI-FI** tile to see a list of detected Wi-Fi networks.

**Note**: If the wireless network that you want is not listed, tap  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\circ}$  > **Add network** to manually add it.

- 4. Tap the Wi-Fi network you want to connect to.
- 5. If you selected a secured network, you'll be asked to enter the network key or password.
- 6. Tap **CONNECT**. You'll see the Wi-Fi icon ( ) in the status bar when connected.

The next time your phone connects to a previously accessed secured wireless network, you won't be asked to enter the key or other security information again.

# Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks

You can prevent getting notified about unsecured Wi-Fi networks.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
- 4. Touch and hold an unsecured Wi-Fi network you want stop being notified about, and tap **Block**

network notification.

5. To unblock an unsecured Wi-Fi network, touch and hold the network name and tap **Unblock** network notification

# Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS

If you're using a Wi-Fi router with Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), you can connect your phone easily.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
- 4. Tap \$> WPS Push, and then press the WPS button on your Wi-Fi router.

Note: To use the Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) PIN method, tap > WPS Pin Entry.

# Disconnect from a Wireless Network

Quickly disconnect from a wireless network your phone is connected to.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the WI-FI tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi
- 4. You can:
  - Tap the wireless network that the phone is connected to, and then tap DISCONNECT.
  - If you want to remove the settings for this network, touch and hold the network name, and then tap **Forget network**.

To connect to another wireless network, see Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks.

#### Wi-Fi Direct

Use Wi-Fi Direct to connect directly to other Wi-Fi Direct devices simply via Wi-Fi, without an access point or via the Internet.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the WI-FI tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi networks.
- 4. Tap > Wi-Fi Direct.
- 5. The Wi-Fi Direct settings menu appears.
  - Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi are unavailable at the same time.

- 6. Tap a device with which to connect. If connected via Wi-Fi, you will see a confirmation. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- 7. Accept the connection on the other device.
  - \* The phone is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.
    - If a connection is not accepted after a certain period, the connection request is cancelled.

To stop a connection, tap **End connection** > **OK**.

# VIRTUAL PRIVATE NETWORKS (VPN)

Add virtual private networks (VPNs) so you can connect and access resources inside a local network, such as your corporate network.

Before you can connect to your organization's local network, you may be asked to:

- Install security certificates
- Enter your login credentials
- Download and install a required VPN app on your phone

Contact your network administrator for details. Also, your phone must first establish a Wi-Fi or data connection before you can start a VPN connection. For information about setting up and using these connections on your phone, see **Data Services General Information (4GLTE and 3G Networks)**.

# Add a VPN Connection

You must first set a lock screen PIN or password before you can use credential storage and set up the VPN.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More > VPN.
- 3. Tap > Add VPN profile.
- 4. Enter the VPN settings and set them up according to the security details your network administrator gave you.
- 5. Tap SAVE.

#### Connect to a VPN

After you've added a VPN connection, you are now ready to connect and access that network.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More > VPN.
- 3. Tap the VPN that you want to connect to.

4. Enter your login credentials, and then tap **CONNECT**. When you are connected, the VPN connected icon — appears in the notification area of the status bar.

You can then open the Web browser to access resources such as your corporate network intranet. For more information, see <u>Chrome Browser</u>.

# Disconnect From a VPN

Disconnect from the VPN when you're done accessing your intranet sites.

- 1. Slide the Notifications panel open.
- 2. Tap the VPN connection, and then tap **Disconnect**.

# **MOBILE HOTSPOT**

Mobile Hotspot allows you to turn your phone into a Wi-Fi hotspot. When this feature is turned on, you can share your phone's mobile data services via Wi-Fi with other Wi-Fi enabled devices. The feature works best when used in conjunction with 4G data services (although 3G service can also be used).

**Important**: Use of the Hotspot feature requires an additional subscription. Visit virginmobileusa.com for more information.

Note: Turning on Hotspot on will disable your phone's connection to other Wi-Fi networks.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More.
- 3. Tap Mobile network sharing > Mobile Hotspot > OK.
- 4. Enter a hotspot name or use the default router name.
- 5. Set the password (key) for your hotspot or use the default password.

**Important**: To help minimize security risks, use the default settings and set a secure and unique password.

**Note**: The password is the key other people need to enter on their device so they can connect and use your phone as a wireless router.

6. Tap the **Mobile Hotspot** ON/OFF switch to turn on the hotspot.

Your phone is ready to be used as a wireless router when you see (••) on the status bar.

# **BLUETOOTH**

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless phones. The Bluetooth communication range is usually approximately 30 feet.

#### **Bluetooth Hints**

Question: Can't use Bluetooth?

**Answer**: Is your phone in airplane mode? Bluetooth is unavailable in airplane mode.

#### Bluetooth Function Cautions

Information may not appear correctly on connected devices depending on the transferred data.

#### Bluetooth Information

Bluetooth is a technology that enables wireless connection with PCs, Bluetooth devices with handsfree features, etc.

| Function         | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Audio output     | Listen to music, etc., wirelessly.  |
| Hands-free calls | Call hands-free, using Bluetooth-capable hands-free devices and headsets. |
| Data exchange    | Exchange data with Bluetooth devices.                                     |

# Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit

You can listen to music over a Bluetooth stereo headset, or have hands-free conversations using a compatible Bluetooth headset or car kit.

**Important**: For you to listen to music with your headset, the headset must support the A2DP Bluetooth profile.

**Note**: Before you connect your headset, make it discoverable so your phone can find it. Refer to your headset manual for details.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
- 4. If you don't see your headset listed, tap **Scan for devices** to refresh the list.
- 5. When you see the name of your headset in the Available Devices section, tap the name. Your phone pairs with the headset and the headset connection status is displayed in the Paired Devices section.

Note: If automatic pairing fails, enter the passcode supplied with your headset.

The pairing and connection status is displayed below the hands-free headset or car kit name in the Bluetooth phones section. When the Bluetooth headset or car kit is connected to your phone, the

Bluetooth connected icon is displayed in the status bar.

# Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit

Normally, you can easily reconnect your headset by switching on Bluetooth on your phone, and then turning on the headset. However, you might have to connect manually if your headset has been used with another Bluetooth device.

**Important**: Make sure that the headset is discoverable. Refer to the headset manual for details.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
- 4. Tap the headset's name in the Paired Devices section.
- 5. If prompted to enter a passcode, try **0000** or **1234**, or consult the headset/car kit documentation to find the passcode.

If you still cannot reconnect to the headset or car kit, follow the instructions in <u>Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device</u>, and then follow the steps in <u>Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit</u>.

# Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device

If you do not need to use Bluetooth at any given point, you can disconnect and unpair your phone from a Bluetooth device.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
- 4. In the Paired Devices section, tap onext to the device to unpair.
- 5. Tap Unpair.

**Note**: Tap the name of the device to reconnect it.

# Send Information Using Bluetooth

You can use Bluetooth to transfer information between your phone and another Bluetooth-enabled device such as a phone or computer. The first time you transfer information between your phone and another phone, you need to enter or confirm a security passcode. After that, your phone and the other phone are paired, and you will not need to exchange passcodes to transfer information in the future.

**Important**: Before you begin, set the receiving phone to discoverable mode. You may also need to set it to "Receive Beams" or "Receive Files." Refer to the phone's documentation for instructions on receiving information over Bluetooth.

You can send the following types of information, depending on the phone you are sending to:

- 1. On your phone, open the application that contains the information or file you want to send.
- 2. Follow the steps for the type of item you want to send:

| What to send                        | How to send   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Contact                             | 1. In the People app, tap a contact to view the contact's details.  |
|                                     | 2. Tap > Send contact.  |
|                                     | 3. Tap <b>Send contact via</b> , and then tap <b>Bluetooth</b> .  |
|                                     | 4. Tap <b>SEND</b> .  |
| Calendar<br>appointment or<br>event | In Day, Agenda, or Week view, touch and hold the event, and then tap <b>Share via &gt; Bluetooth</b> .                                    |
| Photos or videos                    | 1. In Gallery, select a photo and view it in full screen.   |
| videos                              | 2. Tap the photo and tap > Bluetooth.   |
| Captured photo or video             | After capturing, on the Camera preview screen, tap > Bluetooth. (Note that you must have first set a review duration in Camera settings.) |
| Music track                         | Browse to the music track you want to share, and then tap ●●● > Share > Share file > Bluetooth.   |
| Voice recording                     | On the main Voice Recorder screen, tap > Share > Bluetooth.   |

- 3. Turn Bluetooth on and pair with the receiving phone, if you're asked to do so.
- 4. On the receiving device, accept the file.

# Where Sent Information is Saved

When you send information from your phone using Bluetooth, the location where it's saved depends on the type of information and the receiving device.

If you send a calendar event or contact, it is normally added directly to the corresponding application on the receiving phone. For example, if you send a calendar event to a compatible phone, the event is shown in that phone's calendar application.

If you send another file type to a Windows computer, it is normally saved in the Bluetooth Exchange folder within your personal document folders.

- On Windows XP, the path may be:C:\Documents and Settings\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange
- On Windows Vista<sup>®</sup>, the path may be:
   C:\Users\[your username]\Documents
- On Windows 7, the path may be:

C:\Users\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange Folder

On Windows 8, the path may be:C:\Users\[your username]\Documents

If you send a file to another device, the saved location may depend on the file type. For example, if you send an image file to another wireless phone, it may be saved in a folder named "Images."

# Receive Files Using Bluetooth

Your phone lets you receive various files with Bluetooth, including photos, music tracks, contact info, calendar events, and documents such as PDFs.

**Important**: Refer to the other device's documentation for instructions on sending information over Bluetooth.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
- 3. Tap ●●● below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
- 4. Tap your phone's Bluetooth name near the top of the screen to make your phone visible to nearby Bluetooth devices.
- 5. On the sending device, send one or more files to your phone.
- 6. If asked, accept the pairing request on your phone and on the sending device. You may also be prompted to enter the same passcode or confirm the auto-generated passcode on both devices. You'll then get a Bluetooth authorization request.
- 7. Tap PAIR.
- 8. When your phone receives a file transfer request notification, slide the Notifications panel down, tap the incoming file notification, and then tap **ACCEPT**.
- 9. When a file is transferred, a download notification is displayed. Slide the Notifications panel down, and then tap the relevant notification to view the file.

**Tip**: You can also tap > **Show received files** to view files received via Bluetooth.

When you open a received file, what happens next depends on the file type:

- Media files and documents are usually opened directly in a compatible application. For example, if you open a music track, it starts playing in the Music app.
- For a vCalendar file, select the calendar where you want to save the event, and then tap **Import**. The vCalendar is added to your Calendar events. (For more information, see **Calendar**.)
- For a vCard contact file, you can choose to import one, several, or all of those contacts to your contacts list.

# HTC CONNECT

With HTC Connect<sup>®</sup>, wirelessly stream music or video from your phone to your speakers or TV by just swiping up the screen with 3 fingers.

You can stream media to any of the following types of devices:

- Multi-room speakers that support Qualcomm<sup>®</sup> AllPlay™
- Blackfire<sup>®</sup> compliant multi-room speakers
- DLNA compatible speakers and TV
- Miracast compatible display devices
- Bluetooth speakers
- HTC certified consumer electronic devices or accessories that have the HTC Connect logo.



**Note**: Some devices may need to be paired before you can share to them.

To see a list of supported devices or accessories, go to <a href="https://http

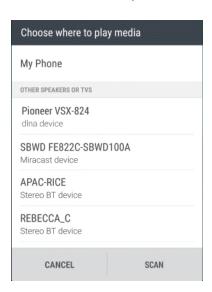
# Share Media Using HTC Connect

Before you start, make sure you have set up your speakers, TV, or appliance to connect to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to its documentation on how to set it up.

- 1. Open and play any music or other media content that you want to share from your phone.
- 2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.



3. Choose the device you want to connect to.

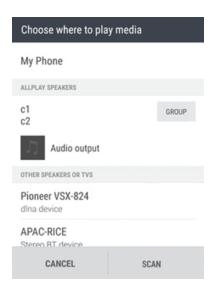


- 4. Once connected, use your phone to control the volume, pause or resume playback, and more.
- 5. To stop wireless media sharing and disconnect from the device, swipe down with three fingers on the screen.

# Stream Music to Speakers Powered by Qualcomm AllPlay Media Platform

Before you start, make sure your AllPlay speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to the documentation that comes with your speakers to set up and connect them to your Wi-Fi network.

- 1. After connecting your AllPlay speakers to your Wi-Fi network, open a music app on your phone.
- 2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.
  - Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available AllPlay speakers listed.
- 3. Tap the speaker you want to connect to.
- 4. In the music app that you're using, start playing music. You'll then hear the music play from the speaker you've selected.
- 5. To switch between AllPlay speakers or to group speakers, swipe up the screen again with three fingers.
  - Just tap another speaker to stream music to it.
  - To group speakers so that music plays through them at the same time, tap the GROUP button next to a speaker name, select the other speakers you want to group it with, and then tap OK.



# Stream Music to Blackfire Compliant Speakers

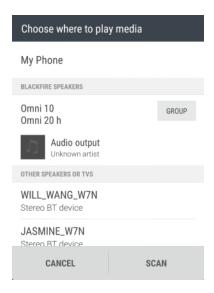
Play music simultaneously to multiple Blackfire compliant speakers from your phone.

**Note**: Before you start, make sure your speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to the documentation that comes with your speakers to set up and connect them to your Wi-Fi network.

- 1. After connecting your speakers to your Wi-Fi network, open a music app on your phone.
- 2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.



- Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available speakers listed.
- 3. Tap the speaker you want to connect to.
- 4. In the music app that you're using, start playing music. You'll then hear the music play from the speaker you've selected.
- 5. To switch between speakers or to group them, swipe up the screen again with three fingers.
  - Just tap another speaker to stream music to it.
  - To group speakers so that music plays through them at the same time, tap the Group button next to a speaker name, select the other speakers you want to group it with, and then tap **OK**.



#### Rename the Speakers

You can rename your Blackfire compliant speakers in Settings.

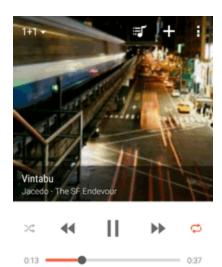
- 1. Make sure the speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network.
- 2. Tap ♠> Settings ♥ > HTC Connect.
  - Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available Blackfire speakers listed.
- 3. Tap next to a speaker name.
- 4. Enter the new speaker name, and then tap **DONE**.

# HTC BoomSound Connect App

If you're using Qualcomm AllPlay powered speakers, download and install the HTC BoomSound™ Connect app to your phone to manage them, queue your songs to a shared speaker, and more.

- 1. Connect your phone to a speaker or grouped speakers. For details, see <u>Stream Music to Speakers Powered by Qualcomm AllPlay Media Platform.</u>
- 2. When you're prompted to download HTC BoomSound Connect, download and install the app.
- 3. Open the BoomSound Connect app.

4. Use the controls in the app to control music playback and adjust the speaker volume.



- To switch between speakers, tap next to the current speaker name, and then tap another
- speaker.
- 6. When several phones are streaming music to the same speaker, tap + to add your music to the queue.

Tap to access the BoomSound Connect settings. You can rename speakers or clear the queue.

# **SETTINGS**

The following topics provide an overview of items you can change using your phone's Settings menus.

# **BASIC SETTINGS**

From the home screen, tap :::> Settings © to access your phone's settings menu.

The table below outlines the top-level settings categories.

| Category                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Airplane mode                  | Turn Airplane mode on or off.   |
| Wi-Fi                          | Enable and set Wi-Fi options.   |
| Bluetooth                      | Enable Bluetooth connections.   |
| Mobile data                    | Settings for your mobile network and data connection.   |
| HTC Connect                    | Options where to play media.  |
| More                           | Settings for data usage, default messaging app, Mobile network sharing, HTC Mini+, and VPN.   |
| Personalize                    | Options for customizing your phone's wallpaper, navigation bar, themes, sound, and more.  |
| Accounts & sync                | Set up your email and social network accounts.  |
| Location                       | Select your phone's location access options.  |
| Security                       | Set up a screen lock and other security features.   |
| Accessibility                  | Set accessibility options such as screen magnification, TalkBack, and more.   |
| Backup and reset               | Options for selecting the backup account, restoring a backup, and resetting the phone.  |
| Get content from another phone | Options for transferring content from an old phone to your new HTC phone.   |
| Display & gestures             | Change the display, motion gestures, and G-Sensor settings.   |
| Sound & notification           | Set your sound profile, volumes, incoming call options, and system sounds.  |
| Call                           | Options for received calls, voicemail settings, and others including hearing aids and CDMA call settings (TTY mode, DDTM mode, plus code dialing, etc). |
| Apps                           | View all downloaded or running apps, uninstall apps, search for an app and more.  |
| Storage                        | View your phone and SD card storage, format the storage card, and more.   |

| Category             | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| Power                | Check your battery level, and battery usage, turn on power saver and extreme power saving mode, and more. |
| Language & keyboard  | Change the language and the onscreen keyboard settings.   |
| Date & time          | Change the date and time and date/time format.  |
| Printing             | Choose print services using Google Cloud Print.   |
| Activate this device | Activate your phone or check your plan.   |
| System updates       | Options for updating your profile, PRL, UICC, and phone software.   |
| About                | View your phone's hardware and software information.  |

# Airplane Mode

Enable or disable Airplane mode.

See Airplane Mode for details.

# Wi-Fi Settings

Your phone lets you take advantage of Wi-Fi hotspots for high-speed data access using available computer networks.

See Wi-Fi for details.

# Bluetooth Settings

Your phone's Bluetooth capabilities let you use wireless headsets, send and receive pictures and files, and more.

See Bluetooth for details.

# Mobile Data Settings

This menu lets you turn your data connection on or off, and more.

See Data Services General Information (4G LTE and 3G Networks) for details.

# HTC Connect

Configure settings for HTC Connect.

See <u>HTC Connect</u> for details.

# More Wireless & Network Settings

Additional options that let you view your data usage, and set up Mobile Hotspot and VPN.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings ©.
- 2. Under Wireless & networks, tap More and select an option.

- Data usage: Check how much data usage have you been using or check the data usage of certain apps. See <u>Manage Your Data Usage</u>.
- **Default messaging app**: Set the default SMS app to use on your phone.
- Mobile network sharing: Use these settings to turn Mobile Hotspot or Bluetooth tethering on or off. See Mobile Hotspot.
- HTC Mini+: Configure and manage your phone's connection with the HTC Mini+ (sold separately).
- VPN: Configure your Virtual Private Network (VPN) settings so you can connect to your company's intranet sites. See Virtual Private Networks (VPN).

# PERSONALIZE SETTINGS

Use the Personalize menu to customize your phone's display, add items to the Home screen, or change the sound settings.

# Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings

Using the phone's Personalize home screen menus, you can set the following settings.

- Customize the wallpaper of your Home screen by choosing from a collection of wallpapers or from your own photos. See <u>Customize the Home Screen</u>.
- Add apps and widgets to the widget panels. See Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts.
- Manage additional home screen panels. See Organize Your Widget Panels.
- Change the lock screen wallpaper. See Customize the Lock Screen.
- Change the phone's theme. See Themes.

# Ringtone

Use the Ringtone settings menu to select a phone ringtone or to make your own music as ringtone.

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings ©.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Ringtone.
- 3. Do any of the following:
  - Select a ringtone from the list and tap APPLY.
  - Add a ringtone from your music. Tap +, tap a music track, tap **OK**, and then tap **APPLY**.

**Note**: To learn how to trim an MP3 song and save it as a ringtone, see <u>Set a Song as a Ringtone</u>.

#### Notification Sound

The Notification sound menu lets you select your phone's notification sound.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Notification sound.
- 3. Select a sound and tap APPLY.

#### **Alarm**

Tap this option to select an alarm sound. For details on how to set an alarm, see Set an Alarm.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Alarm.
- 3. Select a sound and tap APPLY.

#### **Font**

Use these options to select a font and set the font size.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Font style.
- 3. Select a font and tap tap **5**.

**Tip**: To install more fonts to your phone, tap +.

4. Tap **Font size**, and then select the size you want.

# Keyboard and Dialer Color

Tap any of these options to change the keyboard and dialer color.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Personalize > Keyboard color or Dialer color.
- 3. Select a color and tap **5**.

# **ACCOUNTS & SYNC**

The Accounts & sync settings menu lets you add and manage all your email, social networking, online storage, and HTC account.

# Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More

Add your favorite social networks, email accounts, and online storages on your phone so you are connected anywhere you go.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Accounts & sync.
- Tap +.
- 4. Tap an account type. You can set up these accounts on your phone: Exchange ActiveSync, Facebook, Google, HTC Account, Instagram for HTC Sense, LinkedIn for HTC Sense, Mail, Outlook.com, and Twitter.
- 5. Enter your account information and follow screen instructions to proceed.

  Depending on the account type, you may need to enter an email address or user address, password, domain name, or other information. For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, contact your server administrator to determine what information you will need.

# Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account

You can use this menu to add an Exchange ActiveSync account on your phone so you can send and receive email from your corporate email address.

See Add an Email Account.

# Add Email Accounts

Use the Accounts & sync menu to add new email accounts on your phone.

- Tap **△**> : :: > Settings **②**.
- 2. Tap Accounts & sync.
- 3. Tap + > Mail, and then enter your email address and password.
- 4. Tap **NEXT** to continue with regular setup, or tap **MANUAL SETUP** if your account requires additional customization.
- 5. Enter an account name and your name, and then tap **FINISH SETUP**.

You can also use the Mail app to set up additional email accounts. For more information, see <u>Add</u> an Email Account.

# Add One or More Google Accounts

Sign in to your Google Account to see your Gmail, contacts, and calendars, and to use Google apps on your phone.

See Add a Gmail Account.

#### Forgot Your Google Account Password?

If you have forgotten your Google Account password, you can try to recover it by going to the Google website.

- 1. On your phone or computer, open your Web browser.
- 2. Go to google.com/accounts/recovery.
- 3. Select I don't know my password.
- 4. Enter the email address or username that you use to sign in to your Google Account and click **Continue**.
- 5. Follow the instructions on the screen to reset your password.

## Manage Your Online Accounts

Manage the online accounts you have associated with your phone.

#### Remove an Account

You can remove an account from your phone. Removing an account does not remove accounts and information from the online service itself.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Accounts & sync.
- 3. Tap the account that you want to remove.
- 4. Tap ••• > **Remove**.
- 5. Tap **REMOVE ACCOUNT** to confirm.

**Important**: Some personal data may be retained by the third-party app after you have removed the account from your phone.

#### Sync All Your Accounts Automatically

- 2. Tap Accounts & sync.
- 3. Tap the Auto-sync ON/OFF switch to turn automatic sync on or off.

#### Change Synced Data or Settings for an Account

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Accounts & sync.
- 3. Tap the account that you want to update.
- 4. Tap the item you want to sync or edit.

## LOCATION SETTINGS

Your Location settings menu lets you select how your phone determines its location (using the wireless network, GPS satellites, both, or neither).

## **Location Setting**

Your phone is equipped with a Location setting for use in connection with location-based services.

The Location feature allows the network to detect your position. Turning **Location** off will hide your location from everyone except 9-1-1.

**Note**: Turning on **Location** will allow the network to detect your position using GPS technology, making some applications and services easier to use.

To enable your phone's Location setting feature:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Location.
- 3. Tap the ON/OFF switch to turn location services on and off.
- 4. Under Location sources, select the location mode you want. For example, for a better estimate of your location, choose **High accuracy**. To save battery power, choose **Battery saving**.

When you turn the Location setting feature on, the phone displays the  $\bigoplus$  icon on the status bar. When you turn Location setting off, the phone displays the  $\bigoplus$  icon.

**Important**: Turning off a location service means no applications on your phone will collect your location data through that location service. However, third party applications may collect — and your phone may continue to provide — location data through other services, including through Wi-Fi and signal triangulation.

## Google Location History

Select this option if you want to allow Google to collect anonymous location data or to allow certain apps to determine your location.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Location.
- 3. Tap Google Location Reporting > Location History.
- 4. Tap the On/Off switch to turn this setting on or off.

### HTC Location Services

Select this option to set your home and work address for precise location and personal usage with HTC Sense Home.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Location.
- 3. Tap HTC Location Services.
- 4. Set your home and work address.

## SECURITY SETTINGS

Use the Security settings to help increase your phone security, privacy, and more.

## Screen Lock Settings

You can increase the security of your phone by creating a screen lock. When enabled, you will be asked to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen, enter the correct PIN, or enter the correct password to unlock the phone's control keys, buttons, and touchscreen. You can also use face recognition to unlock your screen.

#### Enable or Disable the Lock and Security Screens

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Security.
- 3. Tap **Screen lock** to show the lock screen and not the security screen.
- 4. Tap **No lock screen** to disable both the lock and security screens.

#### Use Face Unlock - Smart Lock

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings ©.
- 2. Tap **Screen lock**, and then select and set up a screen lock. This will be your backup screen lock method to use in case the phone doesn't recognize you or a trusted device.
- 3. On the Security screen, tap **Smart Lock**.
- 4. Confirm your screen lock.
- 5. Tap **Trusted face**.
- 6. Tap **SET UP** > **NEXT** and follow the screen instructions.
- 7. Tap **Lock phone after**, and then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

To help make Smart Lock more reliable and more secure, you can to train HTC Desire 626s to recognize your face in different situations, such as when you're wearing glasses or sporting a beard.

Tap Smart Lock, confirm your screen lock, then tap Trusted face > Improve facematching.
 Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Use a Screen Unlock Pattern

- 2. Tap Security.
- 3. Tap Screen lock > Pattern.
- 4. Draw the screen unlock pattern by connecting at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal, or diagonal direction. Lift your finger from the screen when finished.
- 5. The phone records the pattern. Tap **CONTINUE**.
- 6. When prompted, draw the screen unlock pattern again, and then tap **CONFIRM**.

If you fail to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

**Note**: To change your unlock screen pattern, tap **Screen lock** on the **Security** Draw your current screen unlock pattern and then tap **Pattern**.

#### Use a Screen Unlock PIN

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings  $\bigcirc$ .
- 2. Tap Security.
- 3. Tap Screen lock > PIN.
- 4. Enter a PIN and tap **CONTINUE**.
- 5. Enter your PIN again to confirm and tap **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct PIN after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

#### Use a Screen Unlock Password

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap **Security**.
- 3. Tap Screen lock > Password.
- 4. Enter a password and tap **CONTINUE**.
- 5. Enter your password again to confirm and tap **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct password after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

## Lock Screen and Password Settings

Increase your privacy by selecting what type of information you want to display on the lock screen. You can also choose to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

- Tap □> ::: > Settings □.
- 2. Tap Security.
- 3. Do any of the following:
  - Select the **Incoming phone calls** option to hide the private contact's name and photo on the lock screen. See **Private Contacts**.
  - Clear the **Make passwords visible** option (recommended) to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

## Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs

By default, you can install only programs and games downloaded from Google Play. The Security menu lets you allow installation of non-Play Store apps on your phone.

To allow installation of non-Play Store apps on the phone:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Security.
- 3. Select the **Unknown sources** option.

**Important**: After installing the app, go back to **Settings** > **Security** and make sure to clear the **Unknown sources** option. This can help protect your phone from installing other insecure apps from the Web.

### Work with Certificates

Use client and Certificate Authority (CA) digital certificates to enable your phone to access VPN or secured Wi-Fi networks, and also to provide authentication to online servers. You can get a certificate from your system administrator or download it from sites that require authentication.

**Note**: Some apps such as your browser or email client let you install certificates directly in the app. See the app's help for details.

#### Install a Digital Certificate

**Note**: You must set a lock screen PIN or password before installing a digital certificate.

- 1. Save the certificate file in the root folder on your phone.
- 2. Tap △> Settings ②.
- 3. Tap Security.

- 4. Tap Install from storage.
- 5. If you have more than one certificate in the root folder, select the certificate you want to install.
- 6. Enter a name for the certificate and tap **OK**.

## ACCESSIBILITY SETTINGS

Use these settings when you've downloaded and installed an accessibility tool, such as a screen reader that provides voice feedback. You can turn accessibility functions or services on or off.

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap **Accessibility** and choose the settings you want. Options include:
  - **TalkBack**: Turn this option on if you want your phone to provide spoken feedback. TalkBack helps blind and low-vision users.
  - **Switch Access**: Turn this option on if you want to control your phone using configurable key combinations.
  - Font size: Tap this option to select a font size for better readability.
  - Captions: Turn this option on and then tap it to customize captions for your phone.
  - **Magnification gestures**: Tap this option to enable magnification gestures such as zooming in or out by triple-tapping the screen.
  - Color inversion: Turn on color inversion to improve screen visibility.
  - Color correction: Turn on color correction to improve screen visibility.
  - **Notification reminder**: Turn on this option to turn notifications on or off.
  - **High contrast text**: Select this option to enable high-contrast text for better readability.
  - Power button ends call: When selected, you can press the Power/Lock Button to end a call.
  - **Autorotate screen**: Select this option to automatically change the screen orientation when the phone is rotated.
  - **Speak passwords**: When selected, your phone will speak the passwords you enter on your phone.
  - Accessibility shortcut: Tap this option to quickly turn on accessibility features on your phone.
  - **Text-to-speech output**: Tap to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to a speech synthesis demo.
  - Touch & hold delay: Set the delay when touching and holding items on the screen.

## Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack

Use TalkBack if you need to navigate your phone by spoken feedback. When you tap the screen, your phone vibrates and gives you an audible response so you know what you are tapping.

#### Turn TalkBack On

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Accessibility > TalkBack.
- 3. Tap the **TalkBack** ON/OFF switch.
- 4. Read the TalkBack disclaimer and then tap **OK**. Your phone will enable **Explore by touch**, which provides an audible description of what you're touching on the screen.
  - A short tutorial explaining how to use TalkBack will begin playing after you turn on TalkBack.

**Note**: TalkBack works best if you turn off auto-rotate screen.

#### Use TalkBack Gestures

When TalkBack is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures.

**Note**: HTC gestures such as 3-finger swiping may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled.

To open an item:

- 1. Drag your finger on the screen to find and select the item.
- 2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen to open the item.

To move an item:

- 1. Drag your finger on the screen to find the item.
- 2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen, but don't lift your finger on the second tap.
- 3. Drag the item to a new spot and then lift your finger.

To scroll through a screen:

Use two fingers to swipe up, down, left or right.

To unlock the lock screen:

Use two fingers to swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

To open the Notifications panel:

Use two fingers to swipe down from the top of the screen.

#### Assign TalkBack Shortcuts

TalkBack has customizable gestures that you can use to open the Notifications panel, view recent apps, access TalkBack controls, and more.

**Important**: The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Accessibility > TalkBack.
- 3. Tap > Settings > Manage gestures.
- 4. Tap any of the gestures under Shortcut gestures, and then select an action.

#### Use TalkBack Context Menus

TalkBack has context menus for controlling continuous reading and global TalkBack controls. These menus can be accessed using TalkBack shortcut gestures.

- 1. Turn TalkBack on.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - To open the continuous reading menu, use one finger to swipe up and right in one continuous movement.
  - To open the global context menu, use one finger to swipe down and right in one continuous movement.

**Note**: If you already changed the TalkBack shortcut gestures, check your TalkBack settings for the appropriate gesture.

- 3. Touch and hold anywhere on the screen.
- 4. Drag your finger around the screen to explore the options.

**Note**: To cancel an action, drag your finger to your starting position.

#### Change the TalkBack Reading Speed

**Important**: The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Accessibility > Text-to-speech output > Speech rate.
- 3. Select a speech rate.

**Tip**: You can test the speech rate by tapping **Listen to an example**.

#### Change the TalkBack Language Settings

- 1. Tap  $\triangle > \square >$  Settings  $\bigcirc$ .
- 2. Tap Accessibility.
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - Select a different language: Tap **Text-to-speech output > Google Text-to-speech Engine > Language**.
  - Install a language: Tap Text-to-speech output > Google Text-to-speech Engine > Install voice data.
- 4. Select the language you want to use.

Note: Not all languages are supported.

## BACKUP AND RESET

Find ways on how to back up your data or how to reset the phone.

## Backup

Always keep important stuff on your phone. Back up your phone before you erase the storage, do a factory reset, or upgrade to a new phone.

#### **Backup Options**

- HTC Backup. Use the built-in HTC Backup to back up your accounts, apps, settings, and more to the cloud so that it will be easier to restore them on your phone (after a factory reset) or on a newer phone.
- HTC Sync Manager. Use HTC Sync Manager to import music, photos, and videos to your computer. You can also sync locally stored contacts, calendar events, bookmarks, documents, and playlists to your computer. Likewise, HTC Sync Manager is a good alternative if you don't want to back up your accounts, settings, and other personal content to the cloud. You can use it to create backups of your phone on your computer. For details, see <a href="https://example.com/html/>HTC Sync Manager">HTC Sync Manager</a>.
- Other backup options. Separately back up other data and file types if they're not supported in HTC Backup and HTC Sync Manager. In some apps, you can back up data to the storage on the phone so you can easily restore them after a factory reset.
  - Messages. Back up your text messages to the storage on the phone, or save them as an email attachment. See Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages.
  - Contacts. Save contacts and other personal data to your online accounts so you can just sync them when switching to another phone. If you have locally stored contacts in the People app, export them to the storage on the phone. See Back Up and Restore Your Contacts.
  - **Files**. Manually copy and paste files by connecting your phone to your computer as a disk drive. You can also upload files to online storage and services.

**Note**: If you're backing up data to the storage, don't choose to erase the storage when you do a factory reset.

#### Use HTC Backup

Save the time and frustration of restoring your content when you do a factory reset or you lose, damage, or buy another phone. On your phone, use HTC Backup to do a regular backup to the cloud so you can easily restore your content next time.

HTC Backup uses your Google Drive storage to keep your content and settings. It can back up and restore the following:

- Personalization settings. These include your feed sources in HTC BlinkFeed, widgets, wallpaper, Home screen layout, and ringtones.
- Accounts and passwords. HTC Backup stores the login credentials for many popular email and social network accounts, including Exchange ActiveSync, Outlook.com, and POP/IMAP.
- Apps and settings. These include your contacts stored on your phone, text messages, Web bookmarks, personal dictionary, Wi-Fi networks, free apps you've installed, grid size and sort order on the Apps screen, and more.

#### **Backup Your Phone to Google Drive**

Turn on HTC Backup to do a daily backup of your content over Wi-Fi. You can turn it on by selecting **Back up phone daily** while doing the on-device setup, or enable it in Settings.

**Note**: Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

- Tap ♠> : :: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap Backup & reset > Backup account.
- 3. Tap HTC Account.
- 4. Sign in with your Google Account, HTC Account, or Facebook account.
- 5. On the Cloud storage screen, tap the Google Drive option that has your Google Account name under it, and then tap **OK**.
- 6. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.
- 7. When prompted, tap **OK** to allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
- 8. To do a daily backup, make sure the **Automatic backup** switch is on. You can also tap **Back up now** to manually back up your phone anytime.

You'll see the most recent backup date and time under Backup history.

#### Restore Your Backup to Your Phone From Google Drive

If you backed up your phone to Google Drive before, you can restore your backup to your phone, or to a new HTC phone.

**Note**: Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

**Note**: To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

- 1. When you turn on a new HTC phone for the first time or after a factory reset, choose to restore content, and then select **Restore from HTC Backup** on the Set up phone screen.
- 2. Make sure to sign in using the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Your backup history will then be displayed.
- 3. Select a backup, and then tap **NEXT**.
- 4. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account to backup your phone, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.
- 5. When prompted, allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
- 6. After your settings have been restored, tap **NEXT** to continue setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar.

The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

**Tip**: You can also go to Settings, and then tap **Backup & reset** > **Restore from HTC Backup**. Just make sure that you've already signed in to the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Restoring a backup will overwrite the current data and settings on your phone.

#### Reset Your Phone

If your phone has a persistent problem that cannot be solved, you can perform a factory reset (also called a hard reset or master reset). A factory reset reverts the phone back to its initial state — the state before you turned on the phone for the first time.

The following will be removed from the phone when you do a factory reset:

- Your Google Account
- All accounts you've added in Settings > Accounts & sync and the data associated with these accounts
- Personal data that you've created or synced to the phone such as your profile, contacts, messages, email, calendar events, and more
- System and application data and settings
- Downloaded apps

Files such as your music, photos, videos, and documents will also be deleted if you select the **Erase all data** option.

Be sure to back up any data and files you want to keep before you do a factory reset.

**Note**: A factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

#### Reset Your Phone via Settings

- Tap □ > ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Backup & reset > Reset phone.
- 3. If you also want to delete media and other data on your phone, select **Erase all data**.
- 4. To delete media and other data on your storage card (if you installed one), tap **Erase SD card**.
- 5. Tap **OK**.

Once the phone has reset, it will run through the Hands Free Activation and update processes again. When finished, you will see the Welcome screen and Setup application. See <u>Complete the Setup Screens</u> to start over.

## GET CONTENT FROM ANOTHER PHONE

These options let you transfer content from a previous device to your new phone.

See Transfer Content to Your New Phone for details.

## DISPLAY & GESTURES SETTINGS

Adjusting your phone's display and gestures settings not only helps you see what you want, it can also help increase battery life.

#### Auto-rotate Screen

By default, the screen orientation automatically changes when the phone is rotated. To disable automatic screen orientation:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Clear the **Auto rotate screen** option and tap **5**.

**Note**: Not all application screens support automatic rotation. The screen orientation automatically changes to landscape mode when you turn the phone sideways.

**Note**: The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see <a href="Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack">Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack</a>.

#### Font Size

You can adjust the text size for your viewing comfort.

- Tap △> :::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Tap **Font size** and then select the font size.

## **Brightness**

By default, the screen brightness automatically adjusts depending on the surrounding lighting conditions.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Tap Brightness level.
- 4. Drag the slider to adjust the brightness.
- 5. Tap **OK**.

#### Set the Maximum Brightness Level

You can set the maximum brightness level for your phone screen.

- Tap △> :::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Tap Brightness level.
- 4. Clear the **Automatic brightness** option.
- 5. Drag the slider to adjust the maximum brightness level.

#### **Quickly Adjust the Brightness**

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
- 2. Tap the **BRIGHTNESS** tile repeatedly to select the brightness intensity.

## Screen Timeout (Sleep)

After a period of inactivity, the phone screen turns off to conserve battery power. You can set the idle time before the screen turns off.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Tap **Screen timeout**, and then tap the time before the screen turns off.

Note: Extended screen timeout periods reduce the battery's talk and standby times.

**Tip**: To turn off and lock the screen quickly, press the **Power/Lock Button**.

## Daydream

Select your phone's screensaver when it's idle or docked.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures.
- 3. Tap **Daydream**, and then select a screensaver.
- 4. Tap **5**.

#### Media Gesture

Select this option to allow other apps to recognize the 3-finger gesture.

**Note**: The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap **Display & gestures** > **Media gesture** to select or clear this option.

#### Calibrate the Screen

Recalibrate the screen if you feel that the screen orientation does not respond properly to the way you hold the phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Display & gestures > G Sensor calibration.
- 3. Place the phone on a flat surface, and then tap **CALIBRATE**.
- 4. After the recalibration process, tap **OK**.

## SOUND & NOTIFICATION SETTINGS

The Sound & notification settings menu lets you control your phone's audio, from ringtones and alerts to touch tones and notifications.

#### Sound Profile and Vibrate

Use the following settings for such features as silent mode, vibrate, and overall phone volume.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Sound profile.
- 3. Select Normal, Vibrate, or Silent.
- 4. To set your phone to always vibrate for calls in addition to any ringer settings, select the **Vibrate** option below **Volumes**.

**Note**: If you selected **Vibrate** as your sound profile (step 2), your phone will vibrate for all notifications and incoming calls.

5. Tap **5**.

#### **Volumes**

You can separately adjust your phone's multimedia, ringtone and notifications, and alarm volumes.

- Tap □ > ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Volumes.
- 3. Drag the volume sliders on the screen to adjust the ringtone and notifications, music and videos, and alarm volumes.
- 4. Tap **DONE**.

**Note**: You can adjust the ringer volume in standby mode (or the earpiece volume during a call) by pressing the **Volume Button**.

#### Notification and Alarm Sound

You can set the notification and alarm sound.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Volumes.
- 3. Tap **Notification sound** or **Alarm**.
- 4. Select the sound you want and tap APPLY.

#### Do Not Disturb Mode

Use Do Not Disturb mode to reject calls, and silence audible alerts and notifications, but still keep a data connection available.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Do Not Disturb.
- 3. Tap **Do Not Disturb mode** to turn it on and off, or to choose priority mode.

The Do Not Disturb icon or the priority icon will appear in the status bar. Even when Do Not Disturb mode is on, you'll still see notification icons in the status bar to alert you of missed calls, new messages, calendar events, alarms, and other notifications.

Tip: When the screen is on, press the Volume Button to manage Do Not Disturb mode quickly.

#### Allow Prioritized Notifications to Bypass Do Not Disturb Mode

Add important contacts to an exceptions list so that you can still receive their calls even when Do Not Disturb mode is on.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Do Not Disturb.
- 3. Tap **Do Not Disturb mode**, and then select Priority.
- 4. Select a specific length of time for Do not disturb mode to last, or select **Until turned off** to end the mode when your phone is turned off, and then tap **OK**.
- 5. Tap the ON/OFF switch next to the items you wish to bypass Do not disturb mode.
- 6. Tap Calls or message from to select who can contact you while in Do not disturb mode.
- 7. Tap **Manage approved contacts**, and then tap + to add Do not disturb exceptions.
- 8. To remove contacts or numbers from the exceptions list, tap > Remove contact.

#### Set a Do Not Disturb Schedule

You can schedule when you want Do not disturb to turn on and how long will it last. For example, you can set it to turn on during a weekly meeting.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Do Not Disturb.
- 3. Tap Schedule for and select Priority or On.
- 4. Tap **Days** to set the days you want Do not disturb mode activated, and then tap **DONE**.
- 5. Set the start and the end times.

Calendar events created in your Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® account that have Do not disturb enabled will also be listed on the Do not disturb schedule screen.

## Incoming Calls - Ringtone

You can select and assign ringtones for your incoming calls. Your phone provides a variety of ringtones that you can set as the default ringtone of your phone.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification > Ringtone.
- 3. Tap the ringtone you want to use, and then tap **APPLY**.
  - The ringtone briefly plays when selected.

Note: To set a sound file as ringtone, see Set a Song as a Ringtone.

## Incoming Calls - Other Options

Enable **Quiet ring on pickup** so your phone lowers the ringtone volume the moment you pick it up to answer a call. When your phone is in your bag or pocket, enable **Pocket mode** so the phone rings louder when you have an incoming call. Tap the **Flip to mute** option to mute the phone just by flipping it over.

You can choose to enable or disable the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** incoming call features.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification.
- 3. Select or clear the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** options to enable or disable the features.
- 4. Tap **Flip to mute** and then select the mute setting.

For more information, see Motion Gestures.

## System Sound Settings

The System sound settings menu lets you select whether you hear tones when tapping numbers on the dialpad, selecting onscreen options, and more.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification.
- 3. Select or customize options under the System menu.
  - Keypad touch tones: Select the short tones to use.
  - Touch sounds: Play sounds when making an onscreen selection.
  - Screen lock sounds: Play sounds when locking or unlocking the screen.

- Pull to refresh sounds: Play sounds when pulling the screen down to refresh content.
- Vibrate on touch: Vibrate when tapping soft keys and during certain other instances.
- Emergency tone: Set behavior when an emergency call is placed.

#### Notification - Flash Notifications

Tap this option to select when you want the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification.
- 3. Tap Flash notifications, and then select Always or When screen is off.

## Notification - App Light Notifications

Tap this option to select which app events you want the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up and notify you.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification.
- 3. Tap **App light notifications**.
- 4. Tap an app for which you want to see the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up.

#### Notification - Lock Screen Notifications

These additional options let you choose how to display app notifications on the lock screen.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap Sound & notification.
- 3. Tap App notifications.
- 4. Select an app whose notifications you want to appear on the lock screen.
- 5. Select whether to block or to prioritize all notifications from the selected app.
- 6. Tap **5** twice.
- 7. Tap When device is locked, and then choose whether to show or not to show notifications.
- 8. Tap **Notifications access** to control HTC Dot View notifications.

## **CALL SETTINGS**

Use these options to set call features, voicemail, and more.

### Call Features

Use these options to set various call features.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Set the following:
  - Declined calls: Select to enable text message and reminder options for declined calls.
  - Save to People: Select to add unknown numbers to the People list after the call.

## Voicemail Settings

Use this menu to check your voicemail settings such as the voicemail service provider and voicemail number.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Tap Voicemail service or Voicemail settings.

## Hearing Aids

Select the **Hearing aids** option to enable hearing aid compatibility that amplifies your phone's in-call volume.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Select the **Hearing aids** option.
- 4. Select **Sidetone** to get voice feedback in a hearing aid.

## CDMA Call Settings

Use these options to enable hearing aid compatibility, and adjust several call settings, such as teletypewriter and DDTM.

- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Tap CDMA call settings.

#### TTY Mode

A TTY (teletypewriter, also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications phone that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY phones. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY phone to ensure that it supports digital wireless transmission. Your phone and TTY phone will connect using a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY phone, contact your TTY phone manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

To turn TTY Mode on or off:

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Tap CDMA call settings > TTY mode.
- 4. Tap TTY Full, TTY HCO, or TTY VCO. Tap TTY Off to turn TTY mode off.

**Note**: When enabled, TTY mode may impair the audio quality of non-TTY phones connected to the headset jack.

#### Warning: 9-1-1 Emergency Calling

Virgin Mobile recommends that TTY users make emergency calls by other means, including Telecommunications Relay Services (TRS), analog cellular, and landline communications. Wireless TTY calls to 9-1-1 may be corrupted when received by public safety answering points (PSAPs), rendering some communications unintelligible. The problem encountered appears related to TTY equipment or software used by PSAPs. This matter has been brought to the attention of the FCC, and the wireless industry and the PSAP community are currently working to resolve this.

#### **DDTM Mode**

Select this option if you want to direct all calls to your voicemail when you are using data connection.

#### Other CDMA Call Settings

Select these options to enhance voice privacy, prepend numbers automatically, or use plus code dialing.

- Tap △> : :: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Call.
- 3. Tap **CDMA call settings** and select or customize these options.
  - Voice Privacy: Select to enable enhanced privacy mode.
  - Automatic prepend: Select to automatically add "1" for long distance calls.
  - Plus code dialing: Tap to set plus code dialing. See Place and Answer Calls for details.

## Internet Call Settings

Use these options to set up your Internet calling account.

■ See Internet Calls.

## **APPS SETTINGS**

Use the Apps menu to control your application settings or remove apps.

## Uninstall Third-party Apps

Uninstall apps that you no longer need to save storage space.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Apps.
- 3. On any of the tabs, tap the application you want to uninstall.
- 4. On the App info screen, tap Uninstall.
- 5. Tap **OK** to confirm.

**Note**: You cannot uninstall programs that are preinstalled on the phone.

## Clear Application Cache and Data

Free up storage space and phone memory by deleting application cache and data.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Apps.
- 3. Browse to the app you want to clear and then tap it.

**Tip**: Tap to sort the apps list.

4. In the App info screen, tap Clear data or Clear cache.

## STORAGE SETTINGS

The storage settings menu lets you view and manage the phone storage.

■ Tap 🗘 > Settings 🍳 > Storage.

## Types of Storage

Your phone has the following storage types for your apps, data, and files.

- Phone storage. This storage combines both the internal storage, where apps, email, data, and text messages are stored, and the file storage, where photos, videos, and music files are kept. When you are running out of phone storage, you can free up space by uninstalling apps, changing download settings, or moving files to your computer or to an online storage service.
- **SD card** (Storage card). Use a storage card (purchased separately) for storing more files. You can also set apps such as Camera to store directly to the card.
- **USB** storage. When you plug in an external USB storage device (such as a USB flash drive or an SD card reader), you can view photos and videos stored on the device right from Gallery and play songs stored on the device in Music. You can also open PDFs and edit Office documents.

You need a special cable adapter to connect your phone and a USB storage device. Your phone supports USB storage devices (except portable hard drives) up to 64 GB.

 Online storage. If you're using an online storage account that's accessible from your phone, you can store your files to your online storage.

## Copy Files To or From Your Phone

You can copy your music, photos, and other files to your phone.

- 1. Connect your phone to the computer using the supplied USB cable. You'll see options for viewing or importing files on the computer screen.
- Choose to view files.
- 3. Copy the files from your computer to your phone, or vice versa.
- 4. After copying the files, disconnect the phone from the computer.

## Make More Storage Space

As you use your phone, you'll accumulate data and fill its storage capacity over time. Here are some tips on how to increase storage space.

#### Run the Storage Wizard

Free up space in the phone storage by uninstalling apps and deleting files you no longer need. In Settings, tap **Storage** > **Make more space**.

#### Store Files in Google Drive

Photos, email attachments, and other documents can be stored in Google Drive and accessed anywhere you are. You can set the Camera app to automatically upload photos to Google Drive. See Google Drive.

**Note**: Google Drive is a third-party app and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

#### Manage Photos and Videos

Set the Camera app to automatically upload to a photo-sharing site or online storage. You can retrieve them from the photo-sharing site or online storage when needed.

**Note**: Using data services while uploading photos and videos may be costly. You may want to connect to Wi-Fi or disable auto upload of camera shots if you have a limited data plan.

- After taking continuous camera shots, keep only the best shot and discard the rest.
- After editing a photo or trimming a video, the original file is kept. You can delete original files or move them to online storage or to your computer.
- If you are only sending videos through MMS, use a lower resolution. High-resolution video takes up more space. In Camera settings, tap Video Quality to change the resolution.

#### Back Up Apps Data

Keep only the most recent data from apps on your phone. You can back up calendars, contacts, and bookmarks or export text messages, and personal dictionaries. See **Backup**.

#### Disable Some Apps

Apps, even if not used often, may be running in the background and downloading data into the phone storage. If the app cannot be removed, you can disable it. In Settings, tap **Apps**, slide to the **ALL** tab and select the app that you want to disable. Tap **Disable**.

## Encrypt Data on Your Phone

On the phone storage, you can encrypt data such as your accounts, settings, downloaded apps and their data, media, and other files. On a storage card, you can only encrypt files.

Set a lock screen PIN or password before starting encryption. Fully charge the battery and keep your phone connected to the power adapter during encryption. This process may take about an hour or so.

You cannot undo encryption on the phone storage. If you want to return to an unencrypted phone, you must perform a factory reset. Once you enable storage card encryption, only new files added after encryption will be encrypted. Files already on the card will not be encrypted. Also, storage card encryption doesn't reformat or erase your card. Encrypted files on the storage card can only be opened by the phone that encrypted them.

#### How to Encrypt Data on Your Phone

- 2. Tap Storage.
- 3. Tap Phone storage encryption or tap Encrypt SD card content.

- 4. Tap **NEXT**.
- 5. Enter the lock screen PIN or password, and tap **NEXT**.

#### 6. Tap ENABLE ENCRYPTION

During phone storage encryption, the phone may restart a few times. When storage encryption is complete, enter your PIN or password.

**Note**: If you turn off SD card encryption to stop encrypting new files, previously encrypted files will remain encrypted. To access these files, you must enable encryption again for your storage card.

## **POWER SETTINGS**

Use the Power settings to check the phone's battery, enable Power saver mode, and more.

## Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode

Power saver mode helps to increase battery life. It reduces the usage of phone features that drain the battery such as the display and data connection.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
- 2. Tap ••• below the **SAVER** tile to choose which phone features to conserve power for.

**Note**: If **Data connection** is selected, your phone automatically disconnects from the mobile network after 15 minutes when the screen is off and the data connection is idle (no download activity, streaming, or data usage). It reconnects and then disconnects periodically when the data connection is idle to save battery power.

**Note**: Keep in mind though that the **Sleep mode** option for the data connection in **Settings** > **Power**, when enabled, overrides power saver mode.

3. Tap the **ON/OFF** switch next to Power saver to turn Power saver mode on or off.

## Use Extreme Power Saving Mode

In times when you don't need to use much of your phone, turn Extreme power saving mode on to extend battery life longer. In this mode, standby time can last longer than usual, and you can only use the most basic functions such as phone calls, text messaging, and email.

- 1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
- 2. Tap the **EXT SAVER** tile to turn the mode on. Or to set when to automatically switch this mode on, tap below ●●● the tile.
- 3. Select the check box, and then choose at which battery level the mode will turn on.

## Check Battery Usage

See a ranking list of apps that are using the battery. You can also see how much and how long the battery has been used for each app.

- Tap □ > ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Power > Battery usage.
- 3. Tap an app to check how it's using the battery. You'll see how much battery power is used by resources such as the CPU for the app and other use details.

**Tip**: If you see buttons while viewing an app's battery use details, you can tap them to adjust settings that affect battery usage, stop the app, and more.

## Check Battery History

Check how long you've been using the phone since the last charge. You can also see a chart that shows how long the screen has been on, and how long you've been using connections like the mobile network or Wi-Fi.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Power > History.
- 3. If you've used the phone for a long time since the last charge, swipe left or right to scale the graph that details battery usage over time. You can also slide your fingers together or apart to scale the graph.

## Display the Battery Percentage

You can check the percentage of remaining battery power right from the status bar.

- Tap □ > ::: > Settings □.
- 2. Tap Power.
- 3. Select Show battery level.

## **Battery Saving Tips**

How long the battery can last before it needs recharging depends on how you use your phone. The power management features of your phone helps increase battery life. In times when you need to extend the battery life more, try out some of these tips.

#### Check Your Battery Usage

Monitoring your battery usage helps you identify what's using the most power so you can choose what to do about it. For details, see Check Battery Usage.

#### Manage Your Connections

- Turn off wireless connections such as mobile data, Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth when not in use.
- Turn GPS only when a precise location is needed, such as while using navigation or locationbased apps.

- If the Sleep mode option in Settings > Power is enabled, at low peak times, your phone will turn off the data connection after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage). The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.
- Turn on Airplane mode when you don't need any wireless connections and you don't want to receive calls or messages. For details, see Airplane Mode.

#### Manage Your Display

Lowering the brightness, letting the display sleep when not in use, and keeping it simple helps save battery power.

- Use automatic brightness (the default), or manually lower the brightness.
- Set the screen timeout to a shorter time.
- Don't use a live wallpaper for your Home screen. Animation effects are nice to show off to other people but they drain your battery. Changing your wallpaper to a plain, black background can also help a little. The less color is displayed, the less battery is used.

For more details, see Display & Gestures Settings.

#### Manage Your Apps

- Install the latest software and application updates. Updates sometimes include battery performance improvements.
- Uninstall or disable apps that you never use.
- Many apps run processes or sync data in the background even when you're not using them. If there are apps that you don't need anymore, uninstall them. See Uninstall Third-party Apps.
- If an app came preloaded and can't be uninstalled, disabling the app can still prevent it from continuously running or syncing data. In Settings > Apps, swipe to the ALL tab, tap the app, and then tap Disable.

#### Limit Background Data and Sync

Background data and sync can use a lot of battery power if you have many apps syncing data in the background. It's recommended not to let apps sync data too often. Determine which apps can be set with longer sync times, or sync manually.

- In Settings, tap Accounts & sync and check what types of data are being synced in your online accounts. When the battery is starting to run low, temporarily disable syncing some data.
- If you have many email accounts, consider prolonging the sync time of some accounts. In the Mail app, select an account, tap 

  Settings > Sync, Send & Receive, and then adjust the settings under Sync schedule.

- When you're not traveling from one place to another, sync weather updates of only your current location, rather than in all of your named cities. Open the Weather app, and then tap > Edit cities to remove unneeded cities.
- Choose widgets wisely. Some widgets constantly sync data. Consider removing the ones that are not important from your Home screen.
- In Play Store, tap == > Settings > Auto-update apps > Do not auto-update apps if you're fine with updating apps from Play Store manually.

#### More Battery Saving Tips

To squeeze in a little bit more battery power, try these tips.

- Tone down the ringtone and media volume.
- Minimize the use of vibration or sound feedback. In Settings, tap Sound & notification and choose which ones you don't need and can disable.
- Check your apps' settings as you may find more options to optimize the battery.

## LANGUAGE & KEYBOARD SETTINGS

Your phone's Language & keyboard settings let you select a language for the phones screens and menus, as well as manage a personal user dictionary.

## Change the Phone Language

Changing the language adjusts the keyboard layout, date and time formatting, and more.

- 1. Tap △> Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard.
- 3. Tap **Language** and tap the language you want to use.

## Spell Checker

Turn this feature on to underline misspelled words as you type.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard.
- 3. Tap the ON/OFF switch next to **Spell checker**.

## Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input

The Language & keyboard settings let you select a preferred input method, control keyboard settings, and more.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input.
- 3. Change any of these settings.
  - Keyboard selection: Add or remove languages from the touch input language list.
    - Bilingual prediction: Activate word prediction for a second language.
  - Enable or disable keyboard settings including sound and vibration feedback, show or hide arrow keys, and enable trace keyboard.
  - Advanced settings
    - Trace color: Select the color to use when using the Trace keyboard.
    - Quick ".": Enable this option if you want to insert a period every time you double tap the space bar.
  - Advanced settings: Prediction preference
    - Word prediction: Enable the word prediction feature.
    - **Next word prediction**: Turn on suggestion options for the next word while entering text.
  - Advanced settings: Finger touch calibration
    - Calibration tool: Recalibrate the keyboard if you feel that the keys are not responding accurately to your taps.
    - **Reset calibration**: Reset the calibration back to factory default.
  - Personal dictionary: Add, edit, or remove words in the predictive text dictionary. For more information, see Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard.
  - Tips & Help: Get tips and help related to the onscreen keyboard.

## Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing

This option lets you choose the input language for Google voice typing, block offensive words, or download offline speech recognition.

- Tap ♠> ::: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard > Google voice typing.

## Speech Settings

Use these settings to adjust your Google Voice Search preferences or select your default text-to-speech output.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap Language & keyboard.
- 3. Change any of these settings.
  - Voice Input: Tap to change the default voice search language, speech output, and more
  - **Text-to-speech output**: Tap to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to speech synthesis demo.

## DATE & TIME SETTINGS

By default, your phone automatically uses the network-provided date, time zone, and time. However, you can set the date, time zone, and time manually if you need to.

- Tap △> :::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap Date & time.
- 3. Clear the **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone** options.
- 4. Tap **Set date**, change the date and tap **OK**.
- 5. Tap **Set time**, adjust the time and tap **OK**.
- 6. Tap **Select time zone**, and then select the time zone in the list.
- 7. Select the **Use 24-hour format** option to toggle between using a 12-hour or 24-hour (military) time format.
- 8. Tap **Choose date format**, and then select how you want dates to display on your phone. The selected date format also applies to the date displayed in the Alarm Clock.

## **PRINTING**

Print from anywhere you are using Google Cloud Print™. For more information about Cloud Print, see google.com/cloudprint.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ◎.
- 2. Tap **Printing > Cloud Print**.

## ACTIVATE THIS DEVICE

If your phone has not been activated, you can use the **Activate this device** menu option to begin the process.

- Tap **△**> **...** > **Settings ②**.
- 2. Tap **Activate this device**. Follow the onscreen prompts to begin activation.

If your phone is already activated, you'll see a device Self Service screen with account information, usage details, and more.

## SYSTEM UPDATES

From time to time, system software updates for your phone may be available. Your phone can automatically check and notify you if an update is available. You can download and install the update to your phone. Depending on the type of update, the update may erase all your personal data and customized settings, and it could also remove any programs you have installed. Make sure that you have backed up the information and files you want to keep.

**Note**: Checking and downloading system software updates require data access that will count towards your monthly data allowance.

- Tap △> ::: > Settings ⑨.
- 2. Tap **System updates**.
- 3. Tap any of these available settings:
  - Update profile: Update your online user profile information. See <u>Update Your Profile</u> for details.
  - Update PRL: Update the Preferred Roaming List (PRL). See Update Your PRL for details.
  - UICC Unlock: Unlock the UICC and use a UICC card from other service providers. For more information about UICC unlock, contact Virgin Mobile.
  - HTC software update: Update the phone's operating system. See <u>Update Your Phone</u> Software for details.

## ABOUT YOUR PHONE

The About menu lets you access important phone information and view legal and safety information.

- Tap ♠> : :: > Settings ♥.
- 2. Tap About.
- 3. Scroll through the list and select options to view or customize information.
  - Hardware and software version: Displays the phone hardware and software version.
  - **Software updates**: Check if there are is a new software update available for your phone.
  - Usage and error reporting: Send error, preference, and usage reports to HTC.
  - **Help**: Enable quick tips to appear on the screen.
  - **Network**: Check the operator, signal strength, mobile network type, and more.

- **Phone identity**: Check the phone's name, model number, IMEI, SIM ID, MEID current user name, and number.
- **Software information**: View software related information such as the Android, HTC Sense, and software versions.
- **Legal information**: View HTC legal information, privacy alert, Google legal information and open source licenses.

## COPYRIGHT INFORMATION

©2015 Virgin Mobile USA, L.P. All rights reserved. The Virgin Mobile name and signature and the Virgin Mobile name and logo are registered trademarks of Virgin Enterprises Ltd. and used under license by Virgin Mobile. Other marks are property of their respective owners.

Portions of this document ©2015 HTC Corporation. All rights reserved.

HTC, the HTC logo, HTC Desire, the HTC Desire logo, HTC BlinkFeed, HTC BoomSound, HTC Connect, HTC Dot View, HTC Sense, VideoPic, Zoe, and all other HTC product and feature names are trademarks or registered trademarks in the U.S. and/or other countries of HTC Corporation and its affiliates.

Google, Android, Gmail, Google+, Google Chrome, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Google Maps, Google Now, Google Play, Google Voice Search, Hangouts, Google Wallet, and YouTube are trademarks of Google Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, ActiveSync, Windows Media, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Wi-Fi® and Miracast are registered trademarks of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Facebook is a trademark of Facebook, Inc.

Twitter is a trademark of Twitter, Inc.

DLNA and the DLNA disc logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Digital Living Network Alliance. All rights reserved. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

iCloud, iMessage, iPhone, iTunes, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc. registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Dropbox is a trademark of Dropbox, Inc.

FLICKR is a trademark of Yahoo! Inc.

Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States, and other countries and used with permission. AllPlay and the AllPlay icon are trademarks of Qualcomm Connected Experiences, Inc., and used with permission.

BLACKFIRE RESEARCH™ is a Registered Trademark (No. 3,898,359) of BLACKFIRE RESEARCH CORP.

Polaris Office is a trademark of Infraware, Inc.

LinkedIn is a registered trademark or trademark of LinkedIn Corporation and its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

Instagram is a trademark of Instagram, LLC.

microSD and microSDHC are registered trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

Foursquare is a trademark of Foursquare Labs, Inc. ("Foursquare") in the U.S. and other countries.

LTE is a trademark of European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) registered for the benefit of its members.

All other trademarks and service marks mentioned herein, including company names, product names, service names and logos, are the property of their respective owners and their use herein does not indicate an affiliation with, association with, or endorsement of or by HTC Corporation. Not all marks listed necessarily appear in this User Guide.

HTC software and apps can be used with materials that you own or are lawfully authorized to use and/or duplicate. Unauthorized use and/or duplication of copyrighted material may be a violation of copyright law in the United States and/or other countries/ regions. Violation of U.S. and international copyright laws may subject you to significant civil and/or criminal penalties. HTC Corporation shall not be held responsible for any damages or losses (direct or indirect) that you may incur as a result of using these software and apps.

Screen images contained herein are simulated. HTC shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein, nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from furnishing this material.

The information is provided "as is" without warranty of any kind and is subject to change without notice. HTC also reserves the right to revise the content of this document at any time without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or storing in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form without prior written permission of HTC.

## FOR ASSISTANCE

The following topics address areas of support for your phone, including troubleshooting, specifications, account information, warranty information, and customer service contact information.

## **TROUBLESHOOTING**

Check the questions and answers below for troubleshooting solutions for common phone issues.

#### Check Here First

Question: Phone freezes/operation is unstable.

**Answer**: Restart the phone. If the screen is on and responsive, press and hold **Power/Lock Button** and then tap **Restart**. If the screen won't turn on, press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** for more than 10 seconds until the phone restarts. Keep in mind that you could lose any or all of the data you're working on when you restart the phone. For details, see **Turn Your Phone On and Off**.

Question: Operation is unstable after a new application was installed.

**Answer**: The newly installed application may be the cause. Uninstall the application. See Uninstall an App.

Question: Cannot use phone, mail, or Internet.

**Answer 1**: Check whether you are where signal is weak or out of service area.

Answer 2: Restart the phone. For details, see Turn Your Phone On and Off.

**Answer 3**: Is the phone in Airplane mode? To check that Airplane mode is cancelled:

• Tap  $\triangle$  > Settings . Check if Airplane mode is on or off

Answer 4: Is data communication disabled? To check that data communication is enabled:

• Tap △> ::: > Settings ②. Check if Mobile data is on.

Question: Battery level goes down quickly.

**Answer**: Are you where signal is weak or have been out of service area for a long period? Calling where signal is weak or being out of service area uses a lot of battery. For tips on how to save battery power, see <u>Battery Saving Tips</u>.

**Question**: Cannot install applications.

**Answer**: Applications cannot be installed with only a little free space on the phone or SD card. To check free space, see <u>Storage Settings</u>. Applications not supported by your phone cannot be installed. To install third-party apps, see <u>Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs</u>.

Question: Cannot unlock screen

**Answer**: Restart the phone. If the screen won't unlock, press and hold the **Power/Lock Button** for more than 10 seconds until the phone restarts. Keep in mind that you could lose any or all of the data you're working on when you restart the phone. For details, see **Turn Your Phone On and Off**.

## **SPECIFICATIONS**

The following tables list your phone's and battery's specifications.

#### Phone Specifications

| Item                     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Weight                   | 140g ± 5g  |
| Continuous Talk Time*    | 3G: Approx. 14.52 hours                            |
|                          | 2G: Approx. 15.01 hours                            |
| Continuous Standby Time* | 3G: Approx. 854.63 hours                           |
|                          | 2G: Approx. 640.26 hours                           |
| <b>Charging Time</b>     | Approx. 2.7 hours with 1A                          |
| Dimensions               | 146.9 x 70.9 x 8.19 mm (5.783 x 2.791 x 0.3224 in) |
| Maximum Output           | 3G: 0.25W  |
|                          | 4G: 0.2W   |
|                          | GSM:   |
|                          | ■ 800/900: 2W                                      |
|                          | ■ 1800/1900: 1W                                    |
| Communication Speed      | LTE: DL: 150 Mbps; UL: 50 Mbps                     |
|                          | CDMA RevA.: FL: 3.1 Mbps; RL: 1.8 Mbps,            |
|                          | HSDPA: 14.4 Mbps peak rate                         |
|                          | HSUPA: 5.76 Mbps                                   |

<sup>\*</sup>Battery times (talk time, standby time, and more) are subject to network and phone usage.

A Standby time specification ("specification") is an industry standard that is only intended to allow comparison of different mobile devices under the same circumstances. Power consumption in a standby state is strongly dependent on factors including but not limited to network, settings, location, movement, signal strength and cell traffic. Comparisons of different mobile devices using such a specification can therefore only be done in a controlled laboratory environment. When using any mobile device in real life circumstances for which the mobile device is intended, the standby time could be considerably lower and will be strongly dependent on the factors as mentioned above.

#### **Battery Specifications**

| ltem     | Description      |
|----------|------------------|
| Voltage  | 3.85V; 2nd: 3.8V |
| Туре     | Li-polymer       |
| Capacity | 2000 mAh (min.)  |

# VIRGIN MOBILE ACCOUNT INFORMATION AND HELP

Find out about managing your account online and on your phone, buying additional minutes for your plan, and getting help.

For more information about your Virgin Mobile account, as well as other Virgin Mobile services, visit us at: virginmobileusa.com.

## Manage Your Account

Access information about your account. You can:

- Check your minutes.
- Add money (Top-Up).
- Changes plans.
- And more!

#### From Your Phone

Access your account from the special My Account app.

■ Tap **\( \rightarrow \)** > **\( \rightarrow \)** My Account **( \( \rightarrow \)</del>.** 

#### From Your Computer

Log in with your phone number and account PIN at <u>virginmobileusa.com</u>.

## Top-Up Your Account

Sign up for Auto Pay to keep your service working month after month. Or, you can buy Top-Up cards at thousands of retailers and add money to your account from your phone or by logging in at virginmobileusa.com.

#### **Auto Pay**

Auto Pay is the easiest way to keep your service working. Once you register your credit card, debit card or PayPal account, you can set it to automatically pay your monthly plan. Then you can keep emailing, IMing, Tweeting with Twitter, surfing, and talking with no interruptions. Set up Auto Pay

anytime by logging into My Account at virginmobileusa.com, and adjusting your payment settings.

### From Your Phone

$$-or-$$

## **INDEX**

| 3   | В  |
|---|--|
| 3-way Calling 84  | Back Key 29 Backup 213 Options 213   |
| 4G 121<br>4G LTE 121  | Use HTC Backup 214 Backup and Reset 213 Basic Operations 28  |
| Α   | Basic Photo Editing 145 Adjust 145   |
| Accessibility TalkBack 211 Accessory Jack 4 Activation 20 Airplane Mode 38 Alarm 165 Alarm Sound 203 Albums Add Photos or Videos 140 Copy or Move Photos or Videos 141 Answer a Call 79 Applications 32 Clear App Cache 225 Install Third-Party Apps 209 Uninstall 225 Apps   | Choose 145 Custom Filters 146 Draw 145 Filters 146 Retouch 147 Battery Charge 11 Check History 229 Check Usage 228 Extreme Power Saving Mode 228 Power Saver Mode 228 Save Power 229 Settings 228 Battery Percentage 229 Battery Saving Tips 229 Block List 82   |
| Disable 227 Find and install 46 Manage Notifications 57 Open 34 Open from Lock Screen 34 Recent Apps 34 Refresh Content 35 Request Refunds 47 Uninstall 48 Update 48 Apps and Features 155 Apps List 28, 32 Apps Screen Arrange Apps 36 Group Apps 37 Hide/Unhide Apps 37 Move Apps and Folders 36 Remove Apps from Folder 37 | Bluetooth 189 Car Kit 190 Disconnect Device 191 Headset 190 Information 190 Receive Files 193 Reconnect Phone 191 Send Information 191 Unpair Device 191 Where Sent Information is Saved 192 Bonus Storage 176 Brightness 217 Maximum Level 217 Browser Add Bookmarks 124 Browsing History 125 Find Text 124 Help 126 Options 126 Private Browsing 125 |

| Tabs 124   | Panorama 136  |
|--|---|
| C Calculator 160 Calendar 161 Create Event 162 Edit Event 162 Invites 163 Make Call From 77 Share Events 163 Show or Hide 163                  | Car Kit 190 Change the Language 231 Charger/Accessory Jack 4 Chrome 123 Clear App Cache 225 Clock 164 Additional Features 165 Check Time 164 Set Date 164 Stopwatch 165 Timer 166 |
| Snooze Reminders 164 View Events 162 Call Features 223 Call Forwarding 85 Call History 80-81 Block Caller 82 Erase 82                          | World Clock 165 Conference Calling 84 Connectivity 185 Contacts 87 Contacts List 88 Creative Effects 147  |
| Make Call From 80<br>Open 81<br>Prepend a Number 82  | D Data Services 121   |
| Save a Number 81  Call Log 81  Call Services  Call Forwarding 85  Call Waiting 85  Caller ID 85  | 4G LTE 121 Schedule When to Turn Connection Off 122 Status indicators 121 Track Usage 122 Turn Data Connection On or Off 122  |
| Call Settings 87 Call Waiting 85 Caller ID 85 Camera Capture Mode 131  | Data Usage 122 Date & Time 233 Daydream 218 DDTM Mode 224 Display 216   |
| Close the App 132 Getting Started 130 Record Video 134 Set Flash 131 Take a Picture 132 Tips 133 Use Volume Buttons 132                        | Auto-rotate Screen 216 Font Size 217 DLNA HTC Connect 194 Double Exposure 151 Drag 15   |
| Zooming 131  | Е   |
| Camera and Video 130 Take Pictures and Record Videos 130 Camera Flash 131 Camera Mode Customize 137 Selfie 134 Video 134 Camera Scenes HDR 136 | Elements 153 Email 112     Account Settings 119     Add Account 112     Add Exchange ActiveSync     account 113     Compose and Send 115     Delete Accounts 119                  |

| Delete Messages 117           | G                             |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Inbox 113                     | Gallery 137                   |
| Make Call From 77             | Favorite Photos 138           |
| Manage Messages 116           | Save a Photo from a Video 143 |
| Move Messages 116             | Search Photos 142             |
| Organize 114                  | Tag Photos and Videos 141     |
| Read and Reply 115            | Trim Videos 143               |
| Save an Image 116             | View Albums 138               |
| Search 117                    |                               |
| Send Gmail 109                | View Pictures and Videos 138  |
| Smart Sync 118                | View Timeline 138             |
| Email Account                 | Zoe Highlight 144             |
| Add Exchange ActiveSync 204   | Gestures 13                   |
| Add POP3, IMAP 204            | Get Started 3                 |
| Emergency Numbers 76          | Gmail 109                     |
| Emoji 39                      | Add Account 111               |
| Encrypt Data 227              | Create Account 45             |
| Enhanced 9-1-1 (E 9-1-1) 76   | Get Help 112                  |
| Enter Text 39                 | Inbox 109                     |
| Event                         | Manage Messages 111           |
| Create 162                    | Read and Reply 109            |
| Edit 162                      | Reply Email 111               |
| Exchange ActiveSync           | Send Message 109              |
| Add Account 113               | Google                        |
| Features 117                  | Chrome 123                    |
| Flag Email 118                | Create Account 45             |
| Meeting Request 118           | Hangouts 160                  |
| Out of Office Reply 118       | Sign in 46                    |
| Extended Home Screen 54       | Google Account 44             |
| Extreme Power Saving Mode 228 | Add Account 204               |
| _                             | Forgot Password 204           |
| F                             | Google Drive 176              |
| Face Fusion 153               | Bonus Space 176               |
| Facebook 167                  | Check Space 177               |
| Install App 167               | Upload Photos and Videos 177  |
| Use 167                       | Google Location History 206   |
| Factory Data Reset 215        | Google Maps 157               |
| Feeds Panel 58                | Get Around Maps 157           |
| Off 59                        | Get Directions 158            |
| Files                         | Moving in Maps 157            |
| Transfer Between Phone and    | Search Location 158           |
|                               | Google Now 127                |
| Computer 185                  | Google Play                   |
| Flash 5                       | Find and Install Apps 46      |
| Flick 15                      | Help 48                       |
| Font 203                      | Store 46                      |
| For Assistance 237            | Google Play Music 174         |
| Free Storage 176              | Google Search 126             |
| Front Indicator Light 57      | Google Voice Search 127       |

| Google Voice Typing 43, 232<br>Google Wallet 175<br>Group Messaging 101<br>Group Text 101  | HTC Connect 194 AllPlay 196 Blackfire 196 Share Media 194   |
|--|---|
| Н  | HTC Dot View 182 Notifications to Display 183   |
| Hangouts 160 HDR 136 Headset Jack 3 Hearing Aids 223 Home Key 29 Home Screen 28    Add App Shortcuts 64    Add or Remove Widget Panel 63    Add Widgets 63    Arrange Widget Panels 63    Basics 53  | Recent Calls 183 Wallpaper 182 HTC Help 184 HTC Location Services 206 HTC Sense Home Widget 65 HTC Sense Input Settings 231 HTC Sense Keyboard 39 HTC Sync Manager 178 Get Help 179 Install 178 Transfer iPhone 179                         |
| Change Main Home Screen 62 Change Widget Settings 64 Customize 61 Extended 54 Feeds Panel 58 HTC Sense Home Widget 65 Launch Bar 62 Layout 53 Move or Remove Items 64 Organize Widget Panels 62 Settings 202 Wallpaper 61 HTC BlinkFeed 58 Customize 59 Customize Highlights 60 Off 59 Post Status 61 Remove Content 61 Save Articles 60 | I 125 iCloud 25 IMAP Email 112 In Call Screen and Layout and Operations 79 Incoming Call Answer 79 Mute Ringtone 79 Reject 79 Internet 99 Internet Calls 86 Add Account 86 Make an Internet Call 86 iPhone 179 iPhone Transfer 24 iCloud 25 |
| Select Feeds 59  | K   |
| Show and Add Topics 59 Show Your Content 59 Subscribe to Other Regions 60 HTC Car 155 Customize 157  | Keyboard Touchscreen 39 Keyboard Calibration 43 Keyboard Settings 231   |
| Explore Places 156 Find Places 156   | L   |
| Make Calls 156 Play Music 156 Receive Calls 156 Voice Commands 155   | Language Settings 231<br>LED 57<br>Location Settings 206<br>On or Off 206   |

| Lock Screen Customize 67 Settings 202 Unlock 49 Lock Screen Notifications 69 Long Distance Calls 77   | Notification LED 57 Change Settings 57 Notification Sound 202 Notifications 55 Notifications Panel 56  |
|---|--|
| M   |  |
| Maps 157 Media Gesture 218 Messages Back Up Messages 105 Block Messages 104 Delete Messages 105 Options 106 Secure Box 104 Messaging 99 Help Protect Messages 104 Save and Resume Draft 102 MMS Create Slideshow 100 Reply 102 Send 100 Send Messages 100 | One Comment 144 Online Accounts     Manage 205 Online Storage     Google Drive 176 Online Storage and File Management 176 Onscreen Keyboard     Calibrate 43     Enter Text by Speaking 43     Enter Text, Typing 39     Trace Keyboard 42     Word Prediction 40 Onscreen Navigation 29 Optimize Phone Storage 226 Optional Services 83 |
| Mobile Hotspot 189 Motion Gestures 18 Flip to Mute 18 Pick Up to Lower Volume 19 Pocket Mode 19 Rotate Screen 20 Multimedia Messaging 100   | People 88 Add an Entry 90 Add Entries 90 Backup Contacts 97 Contact Groups 95 Copy 93 Copy Contacts 93   |
| Music Find Music Videos 174 Google Play Music 174 Listen to Music 169 Playlists 171 Trim 172 Update Covers, Artist Photos 172 View Lyrics 173   | Delete an Entry 92 Edit an Entry 92 Find 89 Get in Touch 91 Import 93 Import Contacts 93 Make Call From 81 Manage Entries 92   |
| Music Apps and Sound Enhancements 169 My favorite album 138   | Merge 93<br>My Profile 89  |
| N   | Private Contacts 97 Send Contacts 94   |
| Nano SIM Card Tray 4 Navigation 155 Google Maps 157 Notification Icons 55   | Phone Basics 28 Change Dialer Layout 75 Dialer 74 Interface 53   |

| Parts and Functions 3 Specifications 238                 | Power On 12<br>Power Options |
|--|------------------------------|
| Update 50  | Restart 13                   |
| Phone App 74   | Turn Phone Off 12            |
| Phone Calls  | Turn Phone On 12             |
| Answer 78  | Power Saver 228              |
| Emergency Numbers 76                                     | Predictive Text 40           |
| Extension Number 75                                      | Add to Dictionary 41         |
| From Calendar Event 77                                   | Manage Dictionary 42         |
| From Call History 80                                     | Second Language 41           |
| From Email Messages 77                                   | Prismatic 151                |
| From People 81   | Private Message Box 104      |
| From Text Messages 77                                    | Filvate Message Box 104      |
| International 77   | Q                            |
| Phone Dialpad 74   |                              |
| Place and Answer 74                                      | Quick Settings 30            |
|  | Customize 31                 |
| Place Calls From History/People 80 Return Missed Call 78 | D                            |
| Smart Dial 74  | R                            |
| Use Speed Dial 76  | Radio Frequency Exposure 1   |
| Using Phone Keypad 74                                    | Recent Apps Key 29           |
| Phone Layout (illustration) 3                            | Recoverable Data 1           |
| Phone Number 37  | Reject a Call 79             |
| Phone Update   | Reset Phone 215              |
| Software 50  | Restart Phone 13             |
| Photo Editor 145   | Restore Phone                |
| Basic 145  | From Online Storage 26       |
| Creative Effects 147                                     | Ringtone                     |
| Photo Shapes 149   | Settings 202                 |
| Photo Tips 133   | Trim 172                     |
| Photos   |                              |
| Favorites 138  | S                            |
| Photos & Videos  | Carragia                     |
| View by Location 139                                     | Screen                       |
| Pictures   | Auto-rotate Screen 216       |
| View 138   | Calibrate 218                |
| Pinch 16   | Font Size 217                |
| Play Music 174   | Screen Timeout 217           |
| Play Store 46  | Screen Unlock                |
| Find and Install Apps 46                                 | Face Unlock 207              |
| Playlists  | Password 208                 |
| Create 171   | Pattern 208                  |
| Delete 171   | PIN 208                      |
| Play 171   | Screenshots 31               |
| Plus Code Dialing 77                                     | SD Card 8                    |
| POP3 Email 112   | Format 10                    |
| Post Spelling Check 231                                  | Insert 8                     |
| Power Key 4  | Remove 10                    |
| Power Off 12   | Unmount 9                    |
|  |                              |

| Search 126                         | TTY Mode 224                         |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| By Voice 127                       | Voicemail 223                        |
| Set Options 127                    | Wi-Fi 201                            |
| Using Google 126                   | Wireless and Network 201             |
| Using Google Now 127               | Setup Screens 21                     |
| Search Info 126                    | Shapes 148                           |
| Security Settings                  | Silent Mode 38                       |
| Digital Certificates 209           | SIM Card 5                           |
| Lock Screen 209                    | Handle 5                             |
| Screen Lock 207                    | Insert 6                             |
| Selfie Mode 134                    | Sleep Mode 217                       |
|                                    | Slide 14                             |
| Settings 200 About Your Phone 234  | Smart Dial 74                        |
|                                    |                                      |
| Accessibility 210                  | Smart Lock 207                       |
| Accounts 203                       | Smart Sync 118                       |
| Airplane Mode 201                  | SMS                                  |
| App Light Notifications 222        | Back Up Messages 105                 |
| Apps 225                           | Reply 102                            |
| Backup 213                         | Send 99                              |
| Bluetooth 201                      | Social Network Account               |
| Call 222                           | Add Account 203                      |
| CDMA Calll Settings 223            | Sound                                |
| Date & Time 233                    | Incoming Calls 221                   |
| Device Activation 233              | Notification, Alarm 219              |
| Display & Gestures 216             | Other Options 221                    |
| Flash Notifications 222            | Ringtones 221                        |
| Get Content From Another Phone 216 | Sound Profile 219                    |
| Getting To Know 29                 | System Sounds 221                    |
| Hearing Aids 223                   | Vibrate 219                          |
| HTC Connect 201                    | Volumes 219                          |
| Internet Call Settings 225         | Speaker 3-4                          |
| Keyboard and Dialer Color 203      | Speech Settings 232                  |
| Language & Keyboard 231            | Speed Dial 78                        |
| Location Settings 206              | Spell Checker 231                    |
| Lock Screen Notifications 222      | Spread 16                            |
| Mobile Data 201                    | Status Bar 54                        |
| Overview 200                       | Status Icons 55                      |
| Personalize 202                    | Stopwatch 165                        |
| Power 228                          | Storage                              |
| Printing 233                       | Copy Files 226                       |
| Quick Settings 30                  | Encrypt Data 227                     |
| Reset 215                          | Optimize 226                         |
| Ringtone 87                        | Phone Storage 225                    |
| Screen Capture 31                  | Photos and Videos 227                |
| Security Settings 207, 209         | Storage Types 225                    |
| Sound & Notification 218           | Storage Types 225 Storage Wizard 226 |
|                                    | Transfer Files to Online Storage 226 |
| Storage 225                        | _                                    |
| Sync Accounts 203                  | Storage Wizard 226                   |
| System Updates 234                 | Sweep Panorama 136                   |

| Swipe 14  | Using USB Connection 25   |
|---|---|
| T TalkBack 211    Assign Shortcuts 212    Context Menus 212    Gestures 211    Language 213    Reading Speed 212    Turn On 211 Tap 13 Text   | Transfer Files 226 Trim Ringtone 172 Troubleshooting 237 TTY Mode 224 Turn Device Off 12 Turn Device On 12 Twitter 166 Install App 166 Tweet 167 Two-finger Swipe 17 Type Text 39   |
| Cut and Paste 44 Edit 43 Share 44   | <b>U</b> Update Phone 50  |
| Text and Multimedia Messaging 99 Text Entry 39 Text Message Make Call From 77 Text Messaging  | Back Up Data 50 Prepare 50 Update Operating System 51 Update PRL 52 Update Your Profile 51  |
| Send Messages 99 Themes 69  | V   |
| Bookmark 70 Create 70 Delete 73 Download 70 Edit 71 Mix and Match 71 Search 72 Share 72 Three-finger Gesture 17 Three-finger Tap 18 Timer 166 Touch 13 Touch and Flick 16 Touch and Hold 14 Touch Gestures 13 Touchscreen 4 Keyboard 39 Lock and Unlock 49 Navigation 13 Turn Off 49 Transfer Content 23, 216 From Android Phone 23 iPhone 24 Other Ways to Transfer 26 To/From Your Computer 25 Transfer Contacts 26 | vCalendar 163 Video 134 Video Resolution 134 VideoPic 134 Videos View 138 Virgin Account Information and Help 239 Manage 239 Top-Up 239 Virtual Private Networks (VPN) 188 Voice Memos 181 Voice Recorder 181 Voice Typing 43 Voicemail 83 Notification 83 Retrieve Messages 84 Setup 83 Volume Key 4 VPN Add Connection 188 Connect 188 Disconnect 189 |
| Using Bluetooth 25  | Wallpaper 61  |

```
Weather 166
Wi-Fi 186
Disconnect 187
Prevent Notifications From Unsecured
Networks 186
Turn On or Off 186
WPS 187
Wi-Fi Direct 187
Wi-Fi Hotspot 189
Widget Panels 54
Wireless Router 189
Work With Widgets and App Shortcuts 63
World Clock 165
```

YouTube 168 Search Videos 168 Watch Videos 168

Z

Zoom 16 Zooming 131